CAMBRIDGE

www.irLanguage.com



& Garan Holcombe

Helanie William Book + Resource Book - 2 William Book + Resource Book - 19 Melanie Williams Book + Resource Book - Resource - - Resource

مرجع زبان ايرانيان



این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان به صورت نشر بر خط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است. به ثبت رسیده است. کپی بر داری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگیرد خواهد شد.

Teacher's Book 2

Contents

Map of the course	iv
Introduction	
About Super Minds	viii
Super Minds 2 components	ix
Tour of a unit	xi
Teaching with Super Minds 2	
Working with large classes	xiv
Effective use of L1	xv
Monitoring	xv
Assessment	xvi
Using the Super Minds songs	xvi
Using the Super Minds stories	xvii

Teaching notes

۲	Back to school	Т4
1	My day	T10
2	The zoo	T22
0	Where we live	Т34
6	The market	T46
6	My bedroom	T58
G	People	Т70
1	Off we go!	T82
8	Sports club	T9 4
9	Holiday plans	T106
0	Teacher's Resource BooK2	T121

Map of the course

Vocabulary The classroom: door, bookcase, wall, clock, window, board, cupboard, cupboard, chair, floor	Grammar There's a (car). There are some (balls). (Stand up). Don't (stand up).	Story and value The burglars Helping people	 Thinking skills Matching
--	---	---	---

Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for school
Daily routines: get up. get dressed, have breakfast, brush your teeth, go to school, have lunch, play in the park, have dinner, go to bed	What's the time? It's (nine) o'clock. When do you (have breakfast)? At (seven) o'clock. (Claire gets up) at (eight) o'clock.	What a day! Offering to help your parents The letter sounds ee and ea	 Reading for specific information Writing from a model Listening for specific information Speaking 	 Interpreting visual information Logical- mathematical thinking Selecting and classifying 	Geography: Time zones Project: Make a clock

Song: It's three o'clock in the afternoon

> Creativity

Revision

Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for schoo
Animals: zebra, monkey, hippo, parrot, snake, bear, tiger, tiger, crocodile	(Freddy) likes / doesn't like (spiders). Does (Mark/Emma) like (bananas)? Yes, he/she does. / No, he/she doesn't.	The zoo keeper Helping people The letter sounds <i>i</i> e and y	 Reading for specific information Listening for specific information Writing a description Speaking Reading for detail (19) 	 Applying world knowledge Classifying and categorising 	Science: Animal families Project: Make an animal family group display



Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for school
Places in a town: olayground, cinema, swimming pool, park, hospital, bus stop, shop, street, café, train station	Has your town got a (swimming pool)? Yes, it has. / No, it hasn't. The (cinema) is between the (toy shop) and (Green Street). The (hospital) is behind the (playground).	The tree on the track Perseverance The letter sounds tr. gr and dr	 Reading for specific information Reading for detail Writing a description Reading aloud Listening for specific information Spelling (1) 	 Comparing and sequencing Paying attention to details in a picture 	Art: Towns and art Project: Make pictures of your town and create of collage

() The market (pages 46-57)

Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for school
Food: grapes, beans, bread, emons, romatoes, fish, eggs, mangos, watermelons, vatermelons, potatoes	Would you like a (tomato) / some (bread)? Yes, please. / No, thank you. Are there any (pears) in the (fridge)? Yes, there are. / No, there aren't any. Is there any (bread) in the (basket)? Yes, there is. / No, there isn't any.	Bad apples Cheating doesn't pay The letter sounds w and wh	 Reading for specific information (scanning) Reading for detail Interactive speaking Writing a conversation Listening for specific information 	 Matching visual and written information Applying world knowledge and interpreting 	Science: Bacteria and food Project: Grow some bacteria

Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for schoo
Furniture: lamp, mirror, armchair, wardrobe, sofa, bed, table, mat	I like this/that (book). I like these/those (book)s. Whose (sock)s are these? They're (Fred)'s. Whose (hat) is this? It's (May)'s.	Tidy up! Tidiness The letter sound oo	 Reading for specific information and identification skills Listening for specific information Speaking Reading for detail 	 Reflecting and analysing 	Science: Recycling Project: Make some recycling bins for your classroom
Song: Litt	tle Timothy McKane		> Creat	ivitu 🐚	Revision

(Map of the course (v

B People	C (pages 70–81)			The second s	
Vocabulary The face: eyes, hair, ears, glasses, nose, mouth, cheeks, chin, face	Grammar Are you (angry)? No, I'm not (angry). I'm (tired). / Yes, I'm (angry). Our/Their birthdays are in (May).	Story and value Phonics Thunder's birthday Being a good loser The letter sounds a-e. ai and ay	Skills Reading for specific information and identification skills Writing from a model Listening for specific information Speaking and listening Reading for detail 	 Thinking skills Interpreting and giving reasons Analysing and applying world knowledge Sequencing and remembering 	English for school Science: The life cycle of a butterfly Project: Make a mobile
Song: Wi	no's that man over the	re?	> Creat	ivity 🎾	Revision
Off we	e go! (pages 82-93)				
Vocabulary Transport: helicopter, boat, lorry, scooter, bus, skateboard, taxi, motorbike	Grammar I'd like to go to (Africa) by (plane). What are you doing? I'm (fly)ing (a plane). Are you (fly)ing (a plane)? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.	Story and value Phonics The bus trip Being generous The letter sounds u-e. ew, ue and o-e	 Skills Listening for specific information Speaking Reading for detail Writing a description from a model 	 Matching auditory with visual information Predicting and checking 	English for schoo Maths: Measuring Project: Guess and measure
Song: It's	a big wide world out	there	> Creat	ivity 🌾	Revision
() Sport	s club (pages 94-10	5)			
Vocabulary Sport: badminton, baseball, basketball, football, hockey, table tennis, tennis, swimming, athletics, volleyball	Grammar (Fly)ing (a kite)'s (difficult). What sport do you like doing? I like (swimming). So do I. / I don't.	Story and value Phonics The football club Including people The letter sounds o, oa and o-e	Skills Listening for specific information Speaking Writing sentences collating information Reading for specific information Listening for detail	Thinking skills Comparing and evaluating Evaluating and selecting 	English for school Science: Breathing Project: Find out more about breathing and sport
			LIPULIN		

vi) Map of the course

Vocabulary	Grammar	Story and value Phonics	Skills	Thinking skills	English for schoo
Holidays: visit my cousins, go hiking, keep a scrapbook, help in the garden, build a tree house, read a comic, learn to swim, go camping, take riding essons	Can I/we (go horse riding) (tomorrow morning)?	Dream holidays Helping people The letter sounds z and s	 Reading for specific information and following instructions Listening for specific information Speaking 	• Matching	Literature: Fairy tales Project: Choase your favourite fairy tale and act it out
Song: It's	time for a holiday	I	> Creat	ivitu I	Revision

Map of the course

vii

Introduction

About Super Minds

What is Super Minds?

Super Minds is a seven-level course for primary age students, with a Starter level underpinning Super Minds 1. By building solid foundations, expanding young minds, kindling the imagination and fostering positive values. Super Minds encourages students to become smarter as they develop in the widest educational sense.

A flexible approach

Super Minds offers maximum flexibility:

- Super Minds gives the option of an oral-aural introduction to English by using the Starter level, whereas some schools may prefer to begin with Super Minds 1. All the language from the Starter level is re-introduced in Level 1 in different contexts, developing all four skills.
- All seven levels of Super Minds have been specifically researched to cater for a variety of teaching situations including those with a higher than usual number of hours of English per week. The units include lessons with a core syllabus focus and additional lessons which can be used flexibly according to the time available for English. This is explained in the Tour of a unit (see pages xi-xiii).

Building solid foundations

Super Minds 1 is appropriate for students who are ready to begin reading and writing in English and includes an early focus on the alphabet. The solid language syllabus is carefully structured to cater for those preparing for the YLE exams, with the YLE Starters syllabus covered by the end of Super Minds 2.

The students meet four Super Friends with engaging super powers: Whisper can talk to animals, Misty can make herself invisible and Thunder and Flash have superhuman strength and speed respectively. These powers enable them to take the students on exciting

adventures through which all four language skills are practised and developed.



Expanding young minds

Super Minds begins from the premise that the students are not just language learners but explorers in every aspect of their educational development. The course enables students to become smart in three ways:

- Think! The development of thinking skills underpins the course methodology and is clearly signposted in purposeful activities. These thinking skills are the building blocks of learning and the activities keep in step with the students' increasing maturity through the course.
- Wider thinking through the application of knowledge is encouraged by content and language integrated learning (CLIL), with topic-based material clearly linked with subjects across the curriculum.
- Games and other activities in pairs, groups or as a whole class are designed to improve students' memory and concentration skills.

In Super Minds 1 and 2, specific activities develop a range of skills from observation to thinking skills such as memory, sequencing, categorising and deciphering codes.

Kindling the imagination

From the beginning, Super Minds fuels the imagination not just through the adventures of the superhero characters in school and play contexts parallel to the students' own experiences, but also through specific activities.

Rounding up the language and contexts of the unit, guided visualisation activities invite the students to relax and listen before creating the picture that they saw in their mind, and TPR (total physical response) action sequences enable them to act out a story using simple language.

Fostering positive values

Stories are a highly valuable teaching tool and in addition to the rich linguistic input that they offer, Super Minds also uses stories as a vehicle for the illustration and discussion of values. The students are encouraged through discussion and specific Workbook activities to think about the deeper meaning of the stories, such as the importance of fair play, waiting your turn, helping and looking after your friends.

viii Introduction

Super Minds 2 components



Student's Book

The Student's Book contains:

- An introductory Back to school unit (6 pages) which reintroduces the characters Whisper, Thunder, Misty and Flash, and presents or revises classroom objects. There's / There are, 10–100 and imperatives
- 9 core units (12 pages) with an easy-to-use singlepage lesson format rounding off with revision
- Cut-outs for festivals and selected activities
- Stickers for a different activity in each unit

Each unit offers:

- An opening scene in contemporary and attractive 3D artwork which establishes the setting of the unit story and also provides a vehicle for the presentation of core vocabulary
- A memorable chant to practise the core vocabulary
- 2 grammar lessons with varied presentation and practice activities including targeted oral production of the new language in a Grammar focus feature
- An engaging song for further language practice
- A story featuring the Super Friends characters, illustrating a different value in each unit for class discussion and leading into a phonics facus on specific sounds
- (Think!) Activities to develop a range of thinking skills
- Cross-curricular English for school lessons, broadening the unit topic in the context of other school subjects.

A Creativity lesson featuring either



 an action sequence telling a story in simple language

 A Revision lesson featuring a topic-based game, project or quiz

Interactive DVD-ROM

Dothatt

This complementary component is included with the Student's Book, for students to use at home or in the school computer room, and with the Classware CD-ROM, for teachers to use in the classroom with a computer and a projector. Offering language reinforcement and consolidation while the students also have fun, it contains:

- Interactive games and activities
- The Student's Book stories brought to life with high-quality animation
- The Student's Book songs with karaoke versions for the students to record and play back their own voice
- Videoke activities featuring real-life clips, with the option for students to record themselves speaking one or both roles





Workbook

This reinforces the core vocabulary and grammar and consolidates the students' skills development by offering:

- Reading, matching and colouring puzzles, written practice at word and sentence level, listening input and opportunities for oral work
- A values activity for each unit drawn from the message in the Student's Book story



 Craft activities to extend the focus of the English for school lessons



- A record of learning in each unit which the students personalise by drawing and writing at sentence level
- A full-colour Picture dictionary which guides students to label the core vocabulary from each unit as an additional record of learning





Teacher's Book

This Teacher's Book is interleaved with the Student's Book pages. Each page of teaching notes features:

- An Aims box with detailed lesson aims, new and recycled language, any necessary or optional materials and the language competences that the students will achieve
- Concise and clear instructions, tapescripts and answers for all the Student's Book and Workbook activities
- Additional lesson stages in coloured boxes: Warm-up: ideas for beginning the lesson, recycling language from the previous lesson or presenting new language

Ending the lesson: simple ideas that are flexible in the time available to bring the lesson to a close, requiring no presentation or extra materials

Extension activities: optional activities for extending the focus of the lesson, for which any additional materials are listed as optional in the Aims box

Flashcards

The 103 A5 double-sided flashcards cover all the core vocabulary with the image on one side and the word in a large font on the other.

Class CDs

The 3 Class CDs contain all the recorded material for the Student's Book and Workbook, including the chants, songs, karaoke versions and stories.

Classware CD-ROM

This whiteboard software features:

- The Student's Book pages
- The audio material

It is also packaged together with the Interactive DVD-ROM, which provides interactive activities and games for classroom use.

Teacher's Resource Book

This contains the following flexible photocopiable resources for each unit:

- Three worksheets to reinforce the core vocabulary and structures through extra practice, without introducing unfamiliar language
- One cross-curricular extension worksheet
- Teaching notes with suggestions for exploitation and optional follow-up activities
- An End-of-unit progress test evaluating the core vocabulary and structures with reading, writing and listening activities

Tour of a unit

Super Minds 2 begins with an introductory 6-page Back to school unit in both the Student's Book and the Workbook. This presents again the Super Friends characters together with classroom objects, There's / There are, numbers 10–100 and imperatives.

There are then nine main units, each with twelve lessons. Each page in the Student's Book constitutes a lesson, together with its corresponding Workbook page.

The material is structured in a flexible way to make it suitable for different teaching situations:

- Lessons 1–6 present and practise new core language. as well as including a chant. a song and a story with its follow-up activities.
- Lessons 7–12 focus on skills work and the use of English for school, together with creativity and revision.

Classes with fewer than 5 hours of English per week therefore have the option to miss out some or all of Lessons 7–12, whilst still covering the vocabulary and grammar syllabus.

Using all the material in the Student's Book and Workbook provides enough material for classes with up to 10 hours per week.

Classes with more than 10 hours per week can extend the material by using the worksheets in the Teacher's Resource Book.

Lesson 1

Vocabulary presentation

The core vocabulary of the unit is presented and contextualised in a colourful illustration which also acts as an introductory scene-setting frame for the story later in the unit.

- The students first hear a line or two of dialogue from the opening of the story.
- The students listen and find the new vocabulary in the picture and then listen again, this time repeating the words.
- The new words are then practised in a simple and memorable chant.
- The Workbook offers a wide variety of practice activities, most of which are suitable for homework if necessary.

Lesson 2

Grammar 1

The first of two core grammar points in the unit is presented and practised in Lesson 2, in the topic-based context of the unit.

Occasionally, these grammar lessons use the unit stickers, which are listed in the Materials section of the Aims box in the teaching notes.

- In most cases, the students first hear or read the language and give a non-linguistic response such as numbering, ticking, circling or sticking.
 - There is then a specific oral focus on the new language which can be used for presentation and discussion.
- This is followed by an opportunity to use the language, usually in a game.
- The practice activities in the Workbook begin with more receptive tasks in the early units, building to more active production at phrase and sentence level. They also sometimes include listening.

Lesson 3

Song

The vocabulary and usually the first grammar point of the unit are combined in a song for students to join in and sing.

- The students first listen and read the song, using the pictures to help them, before joining in.
- There is then a follow-up comprehension activity.
- The next track on the CD after the song is always a karaoke version which you can use once the students are familiar with the song.
- The practice activities in the Workbook are varied and do not generally require the use of the CD. However, the karaoke version is very motivating for the students when there are guided opportunities for them to write their own verse of the song.

Lesson 4

Grammar 2

Lesson 4 introduces the second grammar point for the unit.

The range of presentation and practice activities is similar to Lesson 2, including **Grammar focus** and the occasional use of stickers.



Lesson 5 Storu

This lesson features the main story for the unit which was introduced in Lesson 1, bringing

the unit context, vocabulary and structures together. The clear and expressive illustrations invite the students to follow as they listen, and inspire them to act out the story with real emotion later in the lesson.

- The teaching notes first suggest ways of reviewing the characters and the story in the previous episode.
- The students then hear the story, which is brought off the page with clear character voices and sound effects to help them follow the action.
- After discussing the story in English and L1 where appropriate, the students turn to practice activities in the Workbook. Here they first hear lines from the story and tick the character who is speaking. There are then further follow-up activities, often designed to develop thinking skills.
- The Ending the lesson activity in Lesson 5 is always a role play in groups to practise the story.
- The optional Extension activity in Lesson 5 is always a discussion of the value in the story, relating it to examples in students' own lives.

Lesson 6

Story follow-up and values

Lesson 6 exploits the story in more depth and features a phonics focus

- A follow-up comprehension activity in the Student's Book reminds the students of the story.
- The teaching notes then guide a discussion in English and L1 (the student's own language) of the value illustrated in the story. The students are encouraged to think about what the characters say and do and to reflect on what is right (or wrong) about the characters' behaviour.
- The Workbook presents a similar situation to the value from the story, with two pictures illustrating positive and negative behaviour. The students circle the picture which shows the same value as the story.
- After the values discussion, the Phonics focus in both the Student's Book and the Workbook works on specific sounds. The students first find a sentence in the story and then practise a target phrase or sentence featuring further examples of the sound. A memorable cartoon helps the students visually associate the sentence with its meaning.



Lessons 7 and 8

Skills work

These two lessons offer topic-based skills work consolidating the language of the unit while

developing all four language skills. The particular skills focus is clearly identified at the foot of each page.

The varied activities include:

- Think! Thinking activities
- Sticker activities
- Speaking activities for work in pairs, groups or as a whole class
- Tasks in the style of the Cambridge Young Learners English tests as a gentle introduction to the exam
- An opportunity to personalise the language of each unit in a drawing and writing or speaking activity

Lessons 9 and 10



English for school

These two lessons introduce a topic from another area of the primary school curriculum which is related to

the overall unit topic. They are designed to encourage the students to learn about other subjects through English and then to demonstrate and apply that knowledge in follow-up tasks including a project.

 The first lesson usually introduces the topic and presents words which the students use actively but which are not core vocabulary.



- The second English for school lesson provides opportunities for the students to apply the knowledge from the previous lesson, developing their thinking skills.
- A creative project to be done either as a whole class, or in groups or individually rounds off the work on the topic. Some of the projects use the cut-outs at the back of the Student's Book.



 The corresponding pages in the Workbook consolidate the work on the topic through a wide variety of activities.

Lesson 11

Creativity

This lesson brings together the topic and language of the unit in creative ways to encourage the students to use their imagination. It alternates between guided visualisation and TPR (total physical response):

Guided visualisation



 The students are first encouraged to put their heads on their desks, close their eyes and relax.

- They then hear a voice with soft music in the background, asking questions to fire the students' imagination and to encourage them to visualise in their mind.
- After the listening, the students draw (or make) the picture that they imagined. This activity is to encourage self-expression, so the students are encouraged to draw freely, with no sense of 'a right answer'.
- They then present their work to the class or in groups, using language from the unit.



TPR action sequences

- The teaching notes suggest reviewing simple instructions for the students to carry out before they listen.
- The students then hear a sequence of sentences telling a simple story, which they act out with simple language.
- To consolidate their understanding of the story, they then read and number the sentences, matching them with the pictures.
- The corresponding Lesson 11 page in the Workbook is a topic-based craft activity.

Lesson 12

Revision

The Student's Book Revision page in each unit features one of three different activity types:

- Poster activities consolidate the cross-curricular topic as well as the language
- Board games to be played in small groups encourage oral production of the language
- Quiz time pages provide revision in a fun format.

The Workbook page offers an opportunity for the students to create a record of learning and for the teacher to carry out informal assessment.

Picture dictionary activities review key vocabulary of the unit.



Teaching with Super Minds 2

Working with large classes

Working with a large group of students of this age is challenging, but Super Minds has been developed with these teaching situations in mind. In addition to the support in the teaching notes themselves, this section offers tips which you may find useful particularly if you are new to teaching a large class of this age group.

Finding the right resources

Not all subjects require the students to work with two books in one lesson and establishing effective techniques for having the correct book open at the correct page can save a lot of time.

The right book

- The first time you use a book in a lesson, holding up your own Student's Book or Workbook is an obvious cue for the class, but in a large class you can also save time by asking the students to hold up the book as well. Anyone with the wrong book will quickly see what their classmates are doing and will be able to change books.
- To practise reading skills, you could also point to the titles Student's Book and Workbook.

The right page

- Write the page number on the board in figures as you say it in English.
- Again, asking students to hold their books open at the right page can be a faster way of checking that everyone is ready.

Checking instructions

The key to classroom management is clear instruction and the larger the class, the more possibility there is that some students will become distracted and are not then sure what to do.

- If the students need to move to different desks for any reason, move them first and then explain the activity.
- If they need to take certain materials with them, support your instructions with flashcards or board drawings, e.g. Take your pencil (stick the pencil flashcard on the board) and your book (stick the book flashcard on the board) with you.

- You could also use the word side of the flashcards for this, to encourage the students to read.
- Remember that although the students are learning to read in English, the printed instructions are above their level, so even though examples are given for most activities in the Workbook, you will still need to focus on these and demonstrate them with your finger. Ask the class why this is the right answer as an additional comprehension check.
- There will usually be one or two students able and more than willing to explain the instructions in L1 as a final check if some students still seem unsure.

Involving everyone

In Super Minds, presentation and practice activities involving the whole class are balanced with individual practice activities, allowing time for monitoring each student's progress. This combination ensures that all the students are actively involved in the lesson.

The students can also be involved in presentation stages of the lesson, by holding flashcards or demonstrating games and activities with you at the front of the class. This takes longer, but there are several benefits:

- It changes the dynamic of the classroom, which helps to keep everyone's attention.
- It provides opportunities for recycling classroom language in a meaningful way as you invite the students to stand up, come to the front, pick up a pencil, etc. The whole class can hear this language and they watch to see how their classmate responds.
- It demonstrates important values: you share your materials with the students, they play with them, look after them and give them back safely. *Please* and *Thank you* become common, natural phrases in the classroom in a way that isn't possible if the students only ever play a passive role in class.

Confident students will eagerly volunteer to come to the front in every lesson, so you may find it useful to keep a column in your notebook to mark students' names when they have been involved in this way to ensure that everyone has been asked to take part (for example, F = flashcard, A = acting out).

www.irLanguage.com

Working in groups

It is well worth the effort to accustom the students to working in groups in the language classroom. With young students, it is a practical way of managing craftwork and projects. The students can share materials allocated to their group and, with your help, different tasks such as drawing, painting and cutting out can be assigned to different members of the group. This gives the students a sense of responsibility and fosters cooperation. When playing games or doing other speaking activities in a group, each student will have more chance to speak than in an activity for the whole class. If the idea of working in groups is established at a young age, it becomes a natural part of their language learning, which is then extremely beneficial as their fluency increases.

The teaching notes for songs often suggest dividing the class into groups to sing along with the karaoke version.

This can be extended into other aspects of classroom management by establishing general class groups. These groups could be fixed through the year or you could change them at regular intervals such as every term, giving you the opportunity to sort the students into different groups as you develop a picture of their individual needs and contribution in class. Using core vocabulary as the names for these groups allows frequent, natural recycling and you could ask specific groups at different times:

- to distribute art and craft materials, e.g. Lizards, please give out the paper.
- to take responsibility for specific tidying duties after a craft activity, e.g. Apples, please collect the scissors. Kites, put the rubbish in the bin.
- to come and show you their work while the rest stay at their desks, to ensure that the queue is manageable

Effective use of L1

With young learners, it is helpful to establish an Englishspeaking environment as far as is possible, whilst still fostering an encouraging atmosphere where the students feel at ease and able to contribute. The more you use English, the more natural it will be for the students to copy you and to use as much as they can. Many students will also acquire a little more language passively in this way and some may surprise you by using new classroom phrases that they have heard.

However, there are times when the use of L1 is an effective tool:

- After you have first explained and demonstrated a task in English using mime to support your instructions, there may still be some students who lack confidence. Rather than holding up the activity, it may be helpful to use limited L1 to clarify. However, it is best to avoid doing this all the time. If you always repeat instructions in L1 after first explaining in English, the students will learn to expect this and more passive students may 'switch off' until they hear the L1 instructions.
- When a student has clear emotional needs, for example if they are unhappy because a craft activity hasn't turned out as they intended, they won't have the necessary English to explain the problem and English would create a barrier. In these instances, discuss the problem in L1 first, but to move on, you could then use English to console them, to praise their work and to integrate them back into what the rest of the class are doing, e.g. OK now? Really, your kite's great! Come and look at (name)'s kite. It's red and blue like yours.
- Students at this stage don't have the range of English that they would need to discuss abstract issues such as values. For this reason, the teaching notes give very clear suggestions for the use of both English and L1 when working on the deeper meaning of the story in each unit. English is used wherever possible to prompt the students to use relevant key phrases from the story, but L1 is then suggested for the discussion of concepts such as not cheating, teamwork, being brave, etc.

You may find these general principles useful:

- Use English whenever you can use actions or flashcards to support the meaning.
- Use L1 to avoid a breakdown in communication or to discuss abstract issues.

Monitoring

In any lesson, regardless of the class size, monitoring is an essential part of classroom management, to ensure that everyone's attention is on the task in hand. In the language classroom, monitoring takes on an even more important role as it provides informal opportunities for practice and more students will have an opportunity to speak if you encourage this while you are monitoring their work.

As you circulate:

 Use English to praise the students' work and to ask questions about it. Some students may be able to use a few words; others may need questions to prompt them; others may only be ready to understand and agree as you talk about their work.

Introduction

xv

irLanguage.com

 Ask students questions about their classmates' work and encourage them in this way to show interest in others' work and to compliment each other.

Specific issues that may arise when you are monitoring include the following:

- Students may choose to draw items which they cannot yet name in English. When this happens, feed in new vocabulary in a passive way, both for the student individually and for everyone if the work is presented to the class.
- Students may try to write English words on their pictures. Rather than correcting any spelling at this stage, praise their efforts and show the work to the L1 literacy teacher where possible in your teaching situation.

Drafting stage

There are always opportunities in the skills lessons for the students to personalise their learning by drawing and writing freely using the language from the unit. This work is very suitable for display, but you may want the students to draw their picture first and to work on a draft writing stage separately.

Monitoring while the students are working on a rough draft in their exercise books or on scrap paper is a very useful way of informally correcting in a private and individual way:

- Praise some aspect of the work (the picture, the handwriting, the original ideas, the use of new words).
- Ask questions about the picture to check what the student intended to draw.
- If there are serious problems with the writing, ask the student to read what he/she has written. As long as it matches the picture, you can confirm, e.g. That's right. Your car is red. It's small. Then continue We write it like this and demonstrate by writing the sentences for the student to copy on the same sheet of paper.
- For small mistakes, it may be enough to point to the handwritten word and then find and point to the word written correctly in the Student's Book or Workbook.
 Spell out the word correctly using the English alphabet and pointing to each letter to help the student find the mistake.

When you have seen rough drafts, the students can then copy the work out neatly for display. Discuss the finished work with the students, praising any improvements made between their draft and final versions.

Assessment

Assessment at this young age is largely an on-going process of observation in whole class work and monitoring at an individual level, but once the students are developing basic reading and writing skills, you may wish to carry out a more formal evaluation. The Super Minds Teacher's Resource Books provide an end-of-unit test which evaluates the core vocabulary and structures with listening, reading and simple writing activities such as sentence completion.

Using the Workbook Revision page

The Workbook Revision page, whilst ostensibly a record of learning, can also be used for informal assessment. A possible system would be to grade the work as follows:

- Shows awareness of some new language
- Shows awareness of most new language
- Demonstrates vocabulary and both core structures from the unit but with some spelling errors
- Accurate use and spelling of the new vocabulary and both core structures

Using the Super Minds songs

As well as providing a welcome change in the class dynamic, songs are an extremely valuable part of the language-learning process at this stage for three reasons:

- The students will produce far more language in a song than in any other form of practice activity.
- Through songs, the students are producing a series of connected sentences when the rest of their spoken work may still only be at the short phrase or sentence stage.
- The repetitive nature of song lyrics means that key language is activated many times.

Before playing a song

It may be tempting to want to explain the song lyrics from the page before the students hear it, thinking that they will enjoy it more if they understand every word, but it is far more effective and motivating to let them simply enjoy it first.

While playing a song

Where there are repeated words such as a chorus, some students may want to join in reading the words from the page even though this is the first time that they have heard the song. It is rewarding if you encourage this, even if they are not yet sure of the rhythm, as there is plenty of time to work on the song.

xvi) Introduction)

After playing a song

After the students have heard a song once, you may like to explain any unfamiliar language, particularly where it has essential meaning, but the main focus can be on the core language.

Learning a song

- As well as providing a context, the Super Minds song illustrations are designed as visual prompts to help support the meaning of the lyrics.
- It is common for students of this age to 'mumble' the less familiar words, even when they are reading from the song lyrics, so it is usually more beneficial to concentrate on the core language rather than detracting from their enjoyment of the song by insisting on every word.
- Once the students are more familiar with the song they will often be adding in actions, for which they will need to stand and sing without their books.
- When the students are singing without the book, you may, depending on the song structure, sometimes be able to show a flashcard to help them join in enthusiastically with the core nouns.

Performing the songs

- The teaching notes suggest dividing into groups to perform the songs.
- There are karaoke versions of the songs after the main recording. These are best used once the class are confident enough to sing without their books or when the students have written their own verses, as sometimes suggested in the Workbook.
- Where possible in your teaching situation, you could use the karaoke versions as a showcase for parents to see what their children have been learning.

Using the Super Minds stories

The scene-setting on the opening page of each unit in Super Minds creates anticipation, which encourages the students to listen and follow the main story when they reach Lesson 5. The teaching notes suggest ways of referring back to the initial scene, offering an ideal opportunity to revise the core vocabulary before hearing the story.



It is very useful to establish an agreement with the class at the beginning of the year that story time is special and that there are to be no interruptions.

Before playing a story

- Explain that students should ask any questions before you start playing the CD.
- Tell students to put all their pencils and crayons away in their pencil cases to avoid fidgeting and the unwelcome distraction of things falling on the floor.

While listening to a story

- Hold up your book and point to each speech bubble as the characters speak.
- Encourage the students to listen out for the sound that signals the end of each frame by cupping your hand to your ear every time it sounds. After working with the first story in the course, they will soon learn to recognise this.

After listening to a story

- The Lesson 5 teaching notes give detailed guidance on how to work with the story, with suggestions for 'scaffolding' (using prompts to encourage the students to say words and phrases from the story), questions that can be phrased in English and others which will be more effective in L1.
- In Lesson 6 there is then the full exploitation of the value illustrated in the story, as mentioned on page xii.

Performing the stories

As well as acting the stories out in class, you could consider putting on a performance of some of the stories for parents. This is a very visual demonstration of the work done during the year and is highly motivating for the students.

Students who are more self-conscious about acting in public can be involved in other ways such as:

- Writing invitations/'tickets'
- Decorating the invitations/'tickets'
- Making simple props
- Saying Hello to parents in English and showing them to their seats with Please sit here. Even if the parents don't speak English, they will be delighted to hear their children using simple phrases like this.

If you involve the whole class in different ways as above, be sure to acknowledge everyone's contribution in public so that it isn't just the actors who are clapped at the end.



مرجع زبان ايرانيان

Alms:

- to present and practise classroom words
- to say a chant with the class

New language: door, bookcase, wall, clock, window, board, cupboard, chair, floor, touch, And that is all!

Recycled language: character names: Flash, Whisper, Misty, Thunder

Materials: CD, flashcards (classroom words)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name classroom objects. Your students will be able to join in with a chant.

Warm-up

Aim: to review student names and greetings

- Go up to a student and say Hello. I'm (your name). What's your name?
- The student replies. e.g. Hello. I'm / It's (name) or My name's (name).
- Students then greet all the students sitting around them in the same way.

Presentation

Aim: to present things in the classroom

- Hold up each flashcard in turn. Say the word for students to repeat in chorus.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Hand out the flashcards for students to stick on the relevant objects, e.g. board on the board. If you don't have all of the objects in the class, draw them on the board and stick the flashcards next to them, e.g. bookcase.

158 p4 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise things in the classroom and to review the characters

- Draw students' attention to the pictures in the Student's Book. These have been specially developed to help the students say the songs and chants.
- Use the pictures at each stage of the activity to help with understanding and to provide context.
- Ask students if the picture is like their classroom.
- Elicit / tell the class who the character running in is (Flash).
- Play the recording.
- Students point to the objects when they hear them.

CD1 Track O2

Fish: HL Welcome back. Whisper: Thanks, fish. Hi, Thunder, How are you? Thunder: Fine, thanks, Whisper, Where's Misty? Whisper: I don't know. Flash: Sorry I'm late. Wow! A new computer! Now say the words. 1 door, 2 bookcase, 3 wall, 4 clock, 5 window, 6 board, 7 cupboard, 8 chair, 9 floor

- Play the recording again.
- Students point to and say the words.
- Students practise pointing and saying the words in pairs.

2 5B p4 Listen and chant.

Aim: to practise saying a chant for pleasure

- Students look at the chant.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each line for students to repeat.
- Practise the chant as a class.
- Divide the class in half. Groups sing alternate lines, pointing to the relevant place in the classroom as they say it.

WB p4 Look and draw lines.

Aim: to review things in the classroom

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Collect the flashcards from the objects in the classroom.
- Students close their books.
- Make nine groups. Point to an object, e.g. floor, and tell one group to make a label (of the word) for it.
- Repeat for the other eight groups with the other words. Don't say the word.
- Groups make their labels and stick them on the objects.

Extension activity

Aim: to review vocabulary

- Tell students to look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Elicit some of the other things they can see.
 e.g. I can see some books.
- Start a chain: the next student says, e.g. I can see some books and a computer.
- After about eight objects, start another chain.

T4

www.irLanguage.com

Aims:

- to present and practise There's a (clock), There are some (books).
- to play a game with the class

New language: there's a(n) ... , there are some ...

Recycled language: singular and plural nouns. vocabulary from Level 1: the house, kite, apple, book, ruler, ball, car

Materials: CD, flashcards (the classroom)

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about objects using some and a(n).

Warm-up

Aim: to review things in the classroom

- Stick the flashcards on the board.
- Write a number under each one.
- Students draw a 2 x 2 grid.
- Play a bingo game, calling out the objects at random.
- If students have the corresponding number, they cross it out.
- The first to cross out all four and call out Bingo! is the winner.

1 SB p5 Listen, look and number the sentences.

Aim: to present and practise There's a(n) ... and There are some ...

- Using realia and drawings, pre-teach/elicit apple, ruler and book.
- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book and read the sentences silently.
- Play the recording. Students listen and number.

CD1 Track O4

- 1 There's an apple.
- 2 There are some books.
- 3 There's a clock.
- 4 There are some rulers.
- They check in pairs. Play the recording again and check with the class.
- Elicit what they notice about the words (we use There's a(n) with singular and There are some with plurals).
- Elicit when to use an.
- Key: 2 There are some books. 1 There's an apple. 3 There's a clock. 4 There are some rulers.

2 58 p5 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

Play each sentence for students to repeat.

- Play the sentences again and students repeat.
- Listen for weak forms of a and some.
- Students practise saying the statements in pairs, substituting things in the room and pointing to them.

S8 p5 Play the action game.

Aim: to give students further practice with There's a(n) ... , There are some ...

- Say sentences about the picture in the Student's Book, using There's / There are.
- Make some sentences true and some false.
- Students stand up if a sentence is true and sit down if it is false.

1 WB p5 Look, read and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review There's a(n) There are some ...

Key: 2 yes, 3 yes, 4 yes, 5 yes, 6 no

WB p5 Look and circle.

Aim: to give further practice with There is a(n) There are some ...

Key: 2 are, 3 is, 4 is, 5 is, 6 are

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the spelling of the objects in the classroom

- Write the nine classroom words on the board in jumbled letter order.
- Invite students to come to the board and write each word correctly.
- Other students in the class can help them by calling out the spelling.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to have a written record of There's a(n) ... , There are some ...

- Elicit two or three sentences about things in the classroom, e.g. There's a board. There are some chairs.
- Brainstorm words for things in the classroom (including other known words) and make a word map on the board.
- Individually, students write six sentences about the classroom. They head their writing My classroom.
 Each sentence begins with There's or There are.

- to present and practise numbers 21–100
- to review numbers 1–20

to sing a song with the class

New language: numbers 21-100.

it's good to see you all again, welcome back

Recycled language: numbers 1–20, vocabulary from Level 1

Materials: CD, flashcards (numbers)

Language competences: Your students will be able to write and say numbers 1–100.

Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review numbers 1-20

- Call ten students to the front of the class. Whisper numbers between one and ten to them at random. They put themselves in a line from one to ten.
- Repeat with ten more students for numbers 10-20.
- The class chants the numbers, e.g. ONE clap, clap, TWO, clap, clap and the student steps forward from and back to the line as he/she says his/her number.

Presentation

Aim: to present numbers 21-100

- Show each flashcard in turn. Say the word for students to repeat in chorus.
- Make sure they end the word with a short /i/.
- Do this three or four times.
- Write some numbers on the board, e.g. 47, 52, 83.
- Elicit how to say the numbers.
- Invite students to come to the board to write a number for the class to say.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and write the word under each one.
- Point to the word. Students repeat.

SB p6 Listen and sing.

Aim: to practise numbers 1–100, to sing a song with the class

- Take the number flashcards off the board. Add 10 and 20 to the words on the board.
- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- They point to the numbers on the board as they hear them.

- Play the recording again, in sections. Students repeat.
- Make three groups. Groups take turns to sing a verse.
 Use the karaoke version of the song.

2 158 p6 Choose nine numbers from the song. Make a bingo card and play the game.

Aim: to give students further practice with numbers

- Students draw a 3 x 3 bingo card in their notebooks.
- They choose nine numbers from the song and write them on their cards.
- Choose and read numbers from the song. Students cross out numbers when they hear them.
- The first student(s) to cross out all nine shouts Bingo! and is/are the winner(s).

1 IWB p6 Listen and write the numbers.

Aim: to review numbers

CD1 Track O8

- 1 There are 40 spiders.
- 2 There are 38 frogs.
- 3 There are 27 rats.
- 4 There are one hundred caterpillars,
- 5 There are 91 butterflies.

Key: 2 38, 3 27, 4 100, 5 91

WB p6 Look and match.

Aim: to give students practice in recognising the numbers as words

Key: 100 - one hundred, 16 - sixteen, 60 - sixty.

- 83 eighty-three, 50 fifty, 44 forty-four,
- 96 ninety-six, 79 seventy-nine, 20 twenty

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review numbers and to sing for pleasure

 Sing the song from the beginning of the lesson again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise spelling of numbers with the class

- Call out ten numbers at random.
- Students write them in full in their notebooks.
- They check spelling in pairs and then check in their Student's Books and Workbooks.
- Remind them to check they have used the hyphen.

Aim

 to present and practise imperatives for classroom instructions

New language: imperatives: Stand up / Don't stand up

Recycled language: vocabulary from Level 1 Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to understand, respond to and give classroom instructions.

Worm-up

10

Aim: to review classroom instructions

 Give different positive instructions for students to follow, e.g. Put your ruler on your desk. Put your book on your ruler. Put a blue pencil in your book. Put your pencil case in your bag. Stand up, turn around and sit down.

Think! ISB p7 Listen and number the pictures. Then read and draw lines.

Aim: to present and practise positive and negative classroom instructions

Thinking skill: matching text with visual information

- Students look at the pictures and at the sentences in the Student's Book.
- In pairs, they try to match them.
- Play the recording. Students listen and number.

CD1 Track 09

- 1 Standup.
- 2 Don't sit down.
- 3 Sit down.
- 4 Open your book,
- 5 Don't open your book.
- 6 Don't stand up.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check understanding using mime.

Key (from left to right): 3, 5, 2, 1, 4, 6 a 3, b 4, c 2, d 6, e 5, f 1

2 58 p7 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play each sentence for students to repeat. Mime each yourself as they say it.
- Play the sentences again and students repeat.
- Students work in pairs, taking turns to give an instruction for their partner to do / not do.

E) SE p7 Play the listening game.

Aim: to give students further practice with positive and negative classroom instructions

- Give instructions for students to follow, e.g. Point to the door.
- Students follow the instruction only when you say Simon says first.
- Start with positive instructions. When students are confident with these, add negative ones.
- Confident students can take on the role of the teacher and give instructions to the class.

WB p7 Put the words in order.

Aim: to practise word order in classroom instructions

Key: 2 Don't sit down. 3 Sit down, please. 4 Open your book, 5 Don't stand up. 6 Don't open your book.

1 W8 p7 Look at Activity 1. Number the pictures.

Aim: to practise matching visual with written information

Key: 5, 2, 6, 4, (1), 3

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review classroom instructions

 Mime some actions for the class to give you the instruction, e.g. pressing a book closed so as not to open it (Don't open your book), about to stand up but staying sitting (Don't stand up).

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice in writing and responding to classroom instructions

- Each student writes four classroom instructions, two positive and two negative.
- They don't show their partner.
- In pairs, they take turns to give and respond to the classroom instruction, using your mime in the Ending the lesson activity as a model.
- Give students further practice using open pairs.



- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: check this out, burglar, drop, great work, well done, we've got them

Recycled language: character names, vocabulary from Level 1

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story.

Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce or review the characters in the story

- Elicit from the students the names of the four Super Friends (Misty, Thunder, Flash and Whisper).
- Ask students to mime their special powers (Misty can disappear. Thunder can lift heavy objects. Flash can run very fast. Whisper can speak to animals).
- Elicit which Super Friend is their favourite (if they met them in Level 1).

SB pp8-9 The burglars

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach burglar.
- Play the recording. Students listen and read to find who catches the burglars at the end (Thunder).
- Play the recording again. Pause after each frame. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check comprehension. Check understanding of new words.

1 CD1 WB p8 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD1 Track 12

- 1 Thunder: The burglars!
- 2 Bird: Whisper, there's a problem at your school.
- 3 Burglar: There are some monsters in here,

Key: 1 1st picture, 2 1st picture, 3 1st picture



WB p8 Find the Super Friends in the story and write the numbers.

Aim: to review the story

Key: b Flash - Picture 4, c Misty - Picture 6, d Thunder - Picture 9

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of seven.
- Students each take a role of one of the characters (the police officers and the bird are the same role).
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review phrases from the story

- Call out phrases from the story in turn, e.g. What's that?
- Students say who is speaking.

- to talk about the meaning of a story
- to review language from the unit to enable students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: character names, vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: CD, flashcards (the classroom, numbers)

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story. Your students will be able to use language from the unit to show what they know.

Warm-up

Aim: to refresh students' memory of the story

- Mime running very fast. Elicit from students who in the story can do this.
- Repeat for the other characters.
- Students take turns to come to the front and mime for the class to say the name.
- Play the recording of the last episode of the story again.

23 ISB p9 Read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to check students' comprehension of the story

- Students read the sentences silently on their own and tick the appropriate box.
- They compare and discuss their ideas in pairs.
- Check with the class, having a student read out the sentence before eliciting the answer. Elicit which picture gives them the information each time.
- Elicit corrections for 'no' answers.

Key: 1 no. 2 yes. 3 no. 4 no. 5 yes

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for classroom objects and for numbers

- Students look at the Picture dictionary pages for classroom objects and numbers 20 to 100 (WB pages 118–119).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures/ numbers and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures/numbers using words from the word bank.

Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review spelling

- Spell out some of the words from the unit. e.g. B U R G L A R.
- Students say the word, e.g. burglar, and find it on a page of the unit.
- Repeat for other new or known words.



- to present and practise daily routines
- to say a chant with the class

New language: get up, get dressed, have breakfast. brush your teeth, go to school, have lunch, play in the park, have dinner, go to bed, early, go out, yawn, crunch, munch, hip, hip, hurray

Recycled language: day, rooms in a house

Materials: CD. flashcards (daily routines)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name some daily routines.

Warm-up

Aim: to review rooms in a house

- Draw on the board the outline of a house in cross section to show the rooms.
- Elicit what it is and what each room is. Include the rooms in Student's Book 1.

Presentation

Aim: to present daily routines: get up, get dressed, have breakfast, brush your teeth, go to school, have lunch, play in the park, have dinner, go to bed

- Using the flashcards and mime, present each daily routine.
- Say the phrase for students to repeat and mime.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to mime and then say the phrase in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and elicit a possible sequence from the students.
- Put the flashcards in this sequence.

158 p10 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise daily routines

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books and compare the sequence with the one on the board.
- Discuss the differences.
- Elicit who students can see in the pictures and which rooms they can see.
- · Play the recording.

CD1 Track 13

Whisper: Good morning! Misty: My favourite purple sweater! Flash: Hove breakfast. Thunder: Oops! Thunder: Do you like your pizza. Misty? Misty: Yes, thanks. It's really good. [Sound of Thunder flying a kite in the park.] [Sound of Misty and her parents having dinner.] [Sound of Flash asleep.]

Now say the words.

1 get up, 2 get dressed, 3 have breakfast, 4 brush your teeth, 5 go to school. 6 have lunch, 7 play in the park, 8 have dinner, 9 go to bed

- Students point to the actions and the words when they hear them.
- Play the recording. Students repeat and mime the actions.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

2 SB p10 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the daily routines

- Students look at the chant. Pre-teach yawn. crunch, munch.
- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the other mimes the actions.
- Swap groups and repeat.

WB p10 Write the words.

Aim: to practise collocations

Key: 2 go. 3 have, 4 have. 5 go. 6 get. 7 get. 8 brush. 9 play

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Mime an action for students to guess using Is it (go to bed)?
- The student who guesses correctly comes and mimes another action.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop memorisation skills

- Students look at the pictures for Student's Book Activity 1 for one minute.
- They close their Student's Books. Say an action, e.g. Have breakfast.
- In pairs, they try to remember what is in the picture.
 e.g. Flash is in the kitchen.
- Elicit ideas from the class.
- Repeat for some of the other pictures.

- to present and practise present simple questions and answers with When: When do you (have breakfast)? At (nine) o'clock.
- to present and practise asking and telling the time: What's the time? It's (nine) o'clock.

New language: When do you (have breakfast)? What's the time? It's (nine) o'clock, at (for time)

Recycled language: daily routines, clock

Materials: CD, flashcards (daily routines). coloured pencils

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer about times of routines.

Warm-up

Aim: to review daily routines

- Flash each flashcard quickly in front of the students.
- Students write the action in their notebooks.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Flash the flashcards again.
- Check with the class, eliciting the spelling.

Presentation

Aim: to present o'clock

- Draw a clock on the board showing ten o'clock.
- Elicit/teach It's ten o'clock.
- Practise with other times on the hour.

158 p11 Listen and colour.

Aim: to practise o'clock

 Play the recording. Students listen and put a coloured dot on the clock.

CD1 Track 15

Green Boy: What's the time? Girl: It's five o'clock, Red Boy: What's the time? Girl: It's eight o'clock, Yellow Boy: What's the time? Girl: It's three o'clock,

Pink Boy: What's the time? Girl: It's one o'clock. Blue Boy: What's the time? Girl: It's eleven o'clock.

- Students compare colours in pairs.
- Play the recording again. Check answers with the class.
- Students colour the clocks.
- Elicit the question: What's the time?
- Key: three o'clock: yellow, five o'clock: green, eight o'clock: red, eleven o'clock: blue, one o'clock: pink

2 58 p11 Listen and draw the times on the clocks.

Aim: to give students further practice with telling the time. to present When do you (go to school)? At (nine o'clock).

- Elicit what the pictures are (the daily routines).
- Play the recording. Students draw the clock hands.

CD1 Track 16 Woman: Nathan, tell me about your day. Nathan: OK. Well, I get up at six o'clock. Woman: When do you have breakfast?

Nathan: At seven o'clock.

Woman: And when do you go to school?
Nathan: At nine o'clock.
Woman: And when do you go to bed?
Nathan: At eight.
Woman: Sorry, when?
Nathan: At eight o'clock.

- Students compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.
- Ask students questions about their daily routines.

3 SB p11 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first question and answer on the recording.
- Students repeat.
- Do the same for the second question and answer.
- Students practise the questions and answers in pairs.

SB p11 Ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with questions and answers

- Demonstrate the activity with two students.
- Put students into pairs. They take turns to ask and answer using the language pattern from Activity 3.

1 WB p11 Read and circle.

Aim: to review telling the time

Key: 2 four, 3 seven, 4 ten, 5 twelve

WB p11 When do you do things? Write the times and draw the hours.

Aim: to practise comprehension of the new language

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

 Students ask and answer about times of daily routines in open pairs.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with telling the time

- Students draw 2 x 2 grids.
- They draw a clock showing the hour in each one.
- Play a bingo game (see page T6 SB Activity 2).

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

Aims:

- to consolidate the present simple first person singular affirmative
- to sing a song with the class

New language: have a shower, eat dinner, drink some tea, and then. What a funny thing to do, What can we do with you?

Recycled language: daily routines, times

Materials: CD, flashcards (daily routines), a set of the following word cards for each group of four (optional): eat, drink, have, go, get, brush, play (on blue card); dressed, shower, lunch, tea, teeth, to school, in the park (on green card)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review daily routines and times

- Ask a student, e.g. When do you go to bed? The student responds.
- The student then asks another student a question about times of their daily routine.
- Continue this open pair practice until every student has asked and answered a question.

1 SB p12 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book. Elicit what they can see in the pictures. Elicit if anything looks strange.
- Use the pictures to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in two groups.
- Elicit from students what is strange about Mr Blue (he does things at strange times).

SB p12 Draw a picture of Mr Blue.

Aim: to consolidate the present simple

- Students look at the picture. Elicit where Mr Blue is and what is strange about the picture.
- In pairs, students think of ideas for strange things Mr Blue does.

- Elicit some of their ideas. Write them on the board if necessary.
- Students draw a picture in their notebooks and write the sentence in a speech bubble.

1 WB p12 Read the song again and number the pictures.

Aim: to check students' understanding of the song Key (from top to bottom): 3. (1), 2, 6, 5, 4

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Put students into groups of four.
- In their groups, students share their ideas from Student's Book Activity 2 and make another verse for the song.
- Groups take turns to sing and mime their songs around the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise collocations

- Make groups of four.
- Give each group a set of word cards. They place them face down on the desk.
- Students take turns to turn over a blue and a green card.
- If the cards collocate (have ... shower), then the student makes a sentence and keeps the cards.
 If they do not collocate, the student turns them face down again.
- Play continues until all the cards are paired.

Note: The game can be played with all the cards face up on the table. Students make pairs of words and then sequence the actions.



- to present and practise the present simple third person singular affirmative
- to consolidate telling the time

New language: present simple third person singular affirmative

Recycled language: daily routines, times Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to read a text and sequence pictures. Your students will be able to talk about other people's daily routines.

Warm-up

Aim: to review times

- Students draw six circles to represent clocks in their notebooks.
- Say four times, e.g. 1 Two o'clock, 2 Nine o'clock.
- Students draw the times on their clocks and then check in pairs.
- In pairs, each student says two more times for their partner to draw on his or her clock.

1 58 p13 Read and number the pictures.

Aim: to present the present simple third person singular affirmative

- Give students time to look at the pictures in the Student's Book first.
- Read the first sentence with the class to check students know what to do.
- Number the picture of Benny getting up as number 1.
- Students read the text quickly and silently to sequence the other pictures.
- They check in pairs.
- Check with the class by reading the text aloud.
- Elicit the sentence about the first picture from students and write it on the board.
- Elicit what they notice about the verb (it has an s).
- Tell the class that sometimes an s is added and sometimes the verb changes (has).

Key (from left to right): 5. 4. 3. 2. 1

2 3 SB p13 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.
- Students take turns to practise the sentences in pairs.



Think! I SB p13 Look and say what the children do.

Aim: to give students practice with giving and following instructions

- Thinking skill: interpreting visual information
- Demonstrate the activity with one or two students.
- Put students into pairs. They take turns to talk about what the three children do.
- Monitor to check and support as necessary.
- Elicit sentences from the class as a final check.
 e.g. Emma _____ at seven o'clock (has dinner).

1 WB p13 Listen and draw lines.

Aim: to give students practice with the present simple

CD1 Track 21

- Dan gets up at seven o'clock.
- 2 Dan has breakfast at eight o'clock.
- 3 Dan goes to school at nine o'clock.
- 4 Dan plays in the park at five o'clock.
- 5 Dan has dinner at six o'clock.
- 6 Dan goes to bed at ten o'clock.

Key: 2 8 o'clock, 3 9 o'clock, 4 5 o'clock, 5 6 o'clock, 6 10 o'clock

2 W8 p13 Write the words.

Aim: to give students practice with writing the present simple

Key: 2 has, 3 goes, 4 plays, 5 has, 6 goes

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Write the simple infinitives of the verbs on the board (eat, have, play, go, get).
- With books closed, students try to remember the third person of each one and how to spell it.
- Check by eliciting a sentence using the third person form from different pairs and elicit the spelling of the verb each time.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with writing the present simple third person affirmative

- Students use the text from Student's Book Activity 1 as a model to write a short text about a friend.
- Encourage students to change times and activities.
- Put students into groups of four. They swap and read each other's texts.
- They say Snap! when they find an activity and a time that match with ones in their own text.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: What a day! not again, careful. It's not such a bad day after all, bedtime, keys, lampshade

Recycled language: language from the story Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story.

Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit some of the phrases and words from the previous episode. Students can use There is / There are to talk about the story, e.g. There are some burglars in the school. Misty has an idea.

(15B pp14-15 What a day!

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit who students can see in the first picture (Thunder).
- Pre-teach a bad day.
- Play the recording. Students listen and decide if it is a bad day for Thunder or not.
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit opinions from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

- Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to elicit what happens to Thunder. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of the things.)
- Elicit from students if they have the same opinion about Thunder's day as they had in Activity 1.

WB p14 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD1 Track 23

- 1 Misty: Careful, Thunder!
- 2 Thunder: Oh. not again,
- 3 Thunder's mum: Can you see my keys? They're under the car.

Key: 1 1st picture, 2 1st picture, 3 2nd picture



WB p14 Find Thunder in the story and write the numbers.

Aim: to review the storyline

Key: b Picture 2, c Picture 8, d Picture 3



Think! WB p14 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 Careful! 3 We can play, hurray!

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of three.
- Students each take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Valunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review ideas and concepts from the story

- Write bad day in a circle on one side of the board and good day in a circle on the other side of the board.
- Elicit one or two ideas from students about a good day and a bad day and start the word maps.
- In groups of four, students think of more ideas. Monitor and help as necessary.
- Elicit their ideas and write some of them on the board to complete the word maps.
- Students copy the word maps into their notebooks.



- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise saying the long vowel sound ee
- Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: keys, see, cheese, peas, teeth

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to identify and say the letter sound ee (cheese) and its alternative spelling ea (peas) and ey (key). They can contrast it with the short letter sound *i*.

Value: offering to help your parents

Warm-up

Aim: to review phrases from the story

- Ask A bad day or a good day? Mime different actions, e.g. falling over. Students say Bad day or Good day.
- Students take turns to mime actions for the class to say if it is a good or a bad day.

SB p15 What does Thunder do at these times?

Aim: to focus students on the detail in the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Students complete the activity individually and then check in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1 gets up. 2 helps his mum. 3 has dinner. 4 walks home. 5 goes to bed

58 p15 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the letter sound ee

- Write see on the board, using a red pen for the ee. Separate out the two phonemes in the word and say each one separately (s – ee) before saying the whole word.
- Show students how they must stretch their lips out in a smile to make the long ee sound. Explain that ee is a long vowel sound. It can be spelt in many ways, but the most common are ee and ea.
- Students repeat Can you see my keys? after you and find the speech bubble in the story (frame 4). Point out that key is also pronounced ee (and monkey).

Key: Mum

(ISB p15 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the letter sound ee. a long vowel sound

 Play the recording. Students look at the picture, read and repeat.

CD1 Track 24

ee - ee - ee

Eat your cheese and peas! Then brush your teeth, please, Eat your cheese and peas! Then brush your teeth, please!

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values | WB p15 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of offering to help their parents

Key: Picture 2

2 3 WB p15 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise contrasting the long vowel sound ee with the short vowel sound *i*

CD1 Track 25

King or queen? Pigs or peas? Chips or cheese? Fish or feet?

WB p15 Listen, say and circle.

CD1 Track 26 Queen, queen (beep) Pigs, pigs (beep)

Chips, chips (beep) Feet, feet (beep)

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review words with the ee letter sound, including some special words (i.e. those that need to be learnt as a whole)

- Dictote the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Remind students of some special words with the ee sound: me, he, she, we and be.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of offering to help parents

- Focus on the parts of the story where Thunder offered to help his mum.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students help their parents.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

Alms:

- to practise reading and writing skills
- to present the present simple form of some new verbs (flies, leaves, arrives)
- to review daily routines

Skills:

- reading for specific information
- writing a short description from a model

New language: fly. arrive, leave, pilot, a long day, Europe, Heathrow airport, Rome, London, Italy

Recycled language: daily routines

Materials: CD, flashcards (daily routines)

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Your students will be able to write about a day of the week from a model.

Warm-up

Aim: to review daily routines

- Display the flashcards around the room.
- Point to each one in turn and elicit the verb/phrase.
- Elicit them in a random sequence, not a logical one.
- Pre-teach fly, leave, arrive and write them on the board in the simple infinitive.

SB p16 Read and circle.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning)

- Tell students that the text is about Janice who is a pilot.
- Tell students to read the six statements below the text. first and to guess which times are correct.
- Students read the text silently to find the answers.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class, eliciting the sentence each time.

Keu: 1 1st clock. 2 2nd clock. 3 2nd clock. 4 1st clock. 5 1st clock, 6 1st clock

SB p16 Choose a day of the week, draw pictures and write about it.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

- Students first write notes about their day and then they draw pictures of themselves doing different activities.
- Students then use the written model from Activity 2 to write about their day.
- Monitor and help as students are writing their drafts. Remind them to use the model.
- Students write a final draft and draw final pictures when you have checked their work.

WB p16 Read the questions. Listen and write a name or a number.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information (scanning)

CD1 Track 27

- 1 Mar: Hello, Are you the little girl in the picture? Girt Ses. I am. Man: What's your name? Girt i'm Shelley, Man: Can you spell your name? Girl Sure, SHELLEN. Man: Thank you,
- 2 Man: And how old are you. Shelley? Girt I'm eight. Man: Eight? Girt Ues.
- 3 Man: Can Lask you some questions about your day. Shelley? Girt Yes, of course. Man: What time do you get up? Girt I get up at seven o'clock. Man: Seven o'clock. Thank you,
- 4 Mar: And what time do you have breakfast? Girl: I have breakfast at eight o'clock. Man: Eight o'clock? Girl: That's right. Man: Thank you,
- 5 Man: And when do you go to school? Girl: I go to school at nine o'clock. Man: Who do you go with? Girt: My best friend. Dawn. Man: Can you spell Dawn, please? Girl: DAWN.

Key: 2 8, 3 7, 4 8, 5 Down

 W8 p16 Draw and write about someone in your family.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students spelling practice

 In pairs, students take turns to spell out their best friend's name.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with information transfer skills

- Students read through the text about Janice again.
- In pairs, they create a timeline to show Janice's day. Start the timeline on the board if necessary.
- They write short phrases, e.g. leaves London above three o'clock on the timeline.
- Students compare their timelines with other pairs.

T16

- to practise listening and speaking skills
- to review use of the present simple for daily routines

Skills:

- listening for specific information
- speaking

New language: fireman, often, all

Recycled language: daily routines, present simple, times, then

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to talk about their day.

Warm-up

Aim: to review daily routines

- With Student's Books closed, elicit what students remember about Janice's day.
- If students did the Extension activity in the previous lesson, they can look at the timeline to help them remember.

158 p17 Listen and draw lines.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information 🕦

- Tell students to look carefully at the pictures and the clocks in the Student's Book.
- Pre-teach fireman.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- Play the recording. Students listen and draw lines from the clocks to the pictures.

CD1 Track 28

Interviewer: Linda, tell me about your dad, Linda: My dad's a fireman, He often works at night. We all have dinner at seven and then he leaves the house at eight, Interviewer: Then do you go to bed? Linda: 9es.1 go to bed at nine. Interviewer: What time does he come home? Linda: Dad comes home at six in the morning and then he has breakfast with us at seven. Interviewer: What time does your dad go to bed? Linda: At eight in the morning, when I leave for school,

- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again for students to check.
- Elicit answers from the class, playing extracts from the recording if necessary.

Key: 1 seven o'clock. 2 eight o'clock. 3 six o'clock. 4 seven o'clock. 5 nine o'clock. 6 eight o'clock

15B p17 Talk about your day.

Aim: to give students speaking practice

- Elicit all the verbs students know to talk about their daily routines.
- Students make notes individually about what they do when during the day. Encourage them to use their imagination (it does not have to be true).
- In pairs, students practise talking about their day to their partner.
- Volunteers talk about their day to the class, using their notes.

WB p17 Read and draw the times in the clocks.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for specific information (scanning)

Key: 2 8 o'clock, 3 10 o'clock, 4 1 o'clock, 5 3 o'clock.
6 5 o'clock, 7 8 o'clock, 8 9 o'clock

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise productive speaking

- Volunteer students take turns to show the pictures of their person from WB page 16 Activity 2 to the class and to read what they wrote aloud to the class.
- Set a listening activity to keep students' attention, e.g. they mark all the different activities on a timeline.

Extension activity

Aim: to give further practice with information transfer

 Students swap texts from SB page 16 Activity 2 and draw and decorate timelines for each other's days.

Aim:

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Geography

Thinking skills: logical-mathematical thinking, drawing analogies

New language: map, time zone, when, plus (+), minus (-), cities, countries

Recycled language:times

Materials: CD, world map

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Geography in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to review places on a map

- Display the world map. Ask a volunteer to come and point to his/her country.
- Repeat for other countries if students are not all from the same country.
- Ask students to come to the map and point to and name other countries/cities they know.

58 p18 Listen, read and look at the map.

Aim: to consolidate the concept of time zones

- Use the map in the Student's Book to introduce/check the concept that times are different in different parts of the world. Pre-teach time zone. Elicit any examples students are familiar with.
- Read the instruction for Activity 1 aloud. Check understanding of + and - and that students know what to do.
- They listen to the recording, read the text and look at the map.
- Discuss the question at the end of the text.



Think! | SB p18 Read and complete.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate the concept of time zones

Thinking skill: logical-mathematical thinking

- Read the instruction aloud.
- Check students understand and know what to do.
- They complete the four sentences on their own.
- As students finish, tell them to check their answers quietly with other early finishers.
- When everyone has finished, check with the class.

Note: Students will not all complete this activity at the same time. Some will need more time and some will do it quickly, depending on their types of intelligence. Give all students time to work it out if you can.

Key: 1 eight, 2 one, 3 nine, 4 ten

W8 p18 Write the names of the cities.

Aim: to encourage students to make use of their own experience and knowledge

Keu: 1 Mexico City. 3 Beijing, 4 New York, 5 Cairo



Think! W8 p18 Look at London and draw the times in the clocks.

Aim: to encourage students to apply world knowledge Thinking skill: logical-mathematical thinking

Keu: 1 twelve o'clock. 3 one o'clock. 4 one o'clock. 5 eight o'clock

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today. e.g. time zones and that there are different times in different parts of the world.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to extend students' understanding of time zones

- Use the information in SB Activity 2 to draw more analogies, e.g. When I get up, people in Sydney are going to bed. Elicit other sentences from students.
- Extend students' understanding to the date line (tomorrow and yesterday) if appropriate, e.g. When I get up on Saturday morning, people in Los Angeles are going to bed – and it's Friday night!

T18

- to extend the focus on Geography through English
- to enable students to complete a project

Recycled language: times, cities, countries, east, west

Materials: CD, world map, card, paints, coloured pens, scissors, split pins

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Geography in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review time zones

- Focus students on the world map. Review their understanding by eliciting where the Mean Time is (Greenwich in London) and what happens to time as you travel east (it's plus Greenwich Mean Time) and what happens to time as you travel west (it's minus Greenwich Mean Time).
- Elicit one or two examples of times in different cities around the world by giving a time in Greenwich.

1 Project | SB p19 Make a clock.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

- Elicit what students can see in each of the pictures.
- Check they know what to do.
- Hand out the card. Students design their clocks.
- Go around the class and check before students cut their clocks out.
- Monitor as students complete the project.
- Help students assemble their clocks if necessary.

2 SB p19 Play games with your clock.

Aim: to enable students to apply what they have learnt about time zones

- Demonstrate the game to the class using the example in the Student's Book.
- Student A reads the first speech bubble. Student B answers and holds up his/her clock showing the correct time (two o'clock).
- Practise the game in open pairs with students saying other cities in place of Mexico City.
- Students practise in closed pairs.
- These are some more ideas for games:
 - Say a time. Students set the time on their clocks. The first one to show the correct time on their clock wins a point.
 - 2 Tell the truth. Student A sets the time on his/her clock but does not show it to Student B. Student A

tells Student B the time and B guesses if Student A is telling the truth or not. Student B wins a point if he/ she is correct. Student A wins a point if he/she can trick his/her partner.

3 Call my bluff. Three students look at the time on the clock. The other students in the class cannot see the clock. Two students tell a false time, and one tells the right time. The rest of the class have to guess who is telling the truth.

WB p19 Read and answer.

Aim: to give students practice in applying their knowledge about time zones

Key: 2 It's nine o'clock in the morning. 3 It's one o'clock in the afternoon. 4 It's six o'clock in the evening.

2 W8 p19 Choose two cities. Draw and write.

Aim: to encourage students to make use of their own knowledge and experience

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've ...
- Elicit from students what they did today. e.g. learnt more about time zones around the world and I've made my own clock.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to make a local time-zone map

- Students work in groups of four.
- Each group decides on a part of the world, e.g. North America, Europe, Africa, Asia. They print out a map from the Internet (or draw it freehand). They label key cities and countries and then mark the different time zones.
- Display the maps around the class for discussion.



1

Aim:

- to stimulate the students' imagination through listening and acting out
- New language: milk, all over, jumper

Recycled language: daily routines, imperatives

Materials: CD, paper, stapler, coloured pens and pencils

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and do actions to demonstrate meaning.

Your students will be able to follow auditory, written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review instructions

 Give students some simple instructions to start the lesson, e.g. Take out your English book. Put it on your desk. Take your pencil case out of your school bag.

Then listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions and in sequencing information

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording and mime the actions.

CD1 Track 30

- 1 Get dressed.
- 2 Have breakfast.
- 3 Get your schoolbag.
- 4 Ohno! There's milk all over you,
- 5 Run into the bathroom.
- 6 Clean your jumper.
- 7 Run to school.
- 8 Stop. Where's your schoolbag?
- Mime the actions without the recording and teach the new language through mime.
- Play the recording again and mime the actions. Students mime the actions with you.
- Students listen again and sequence the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 5, 2, 4, 1, 7, 8, 3, 6

I SB p20 Read and number the sentences from the story.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail

- Read the eight instructions aloud.
- Students individually match the instructions with the pictures.

- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check by asking one student to read an instruction aloud, another to mime the action and another to say the number.

Key (from left to right): 4, 1, 6, 3, 5, 2, 8, 7

S8 p20 Listen to your friend and act out.

Aim: to give students practice in giving and following instructions

- Demonstrate the activity by giving the instructions in random order for the class to follow.
- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Invite more confident students to role play their instructions in front of the class.

WB p20 Make a diary.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of visual and written instructions to make a diary

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

 Play a game of "Simon says' using the instructions from SB page 20 Activity 2. When you say Simon says before the instruction, students mime it. When you do not say Simon says, students do not mime it.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to compare and discuss their diaries

- Put students into groups of four.
- They take turns to read aloud what they do each day.
- Students close their diaries.
- Students in groups tell the class what they can remember about the others in their group.

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

New language: poster

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (daily routines), poster paper for each pair or small group of students, coloured pens, coloured paper, scissors, glue

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to make and talk about a poster.

Warm-up

Aim: to review daily routines

- Use the flashcards to review daily routines. When students say the phrase, stick the flashcard on the board.
- Then elicit other daily routines they have learnt in the unit.



Think! SB p21 Make a poster.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their knowledge of daily routines and times

Thinking skills: selecting and classifying

- Read through all the stages of the poster activity with students first.
- Make sure they know what they have to do.
- Hand out the poster paper to pairs or small groups of students. Remind students to do the stages of the activity in order. Tell them you have to check their work before they can go on to the next stage.
- As you go around the pairs/groups, make sure that all the students are involved. If not, then allocate specific roles (e.g. sticking the paper on the poster) to those who are not.

158 p21 Talk about when you do things.

Aim: to give students practice with productive and interactive speaking

- Demonstrate the activity first with the class.
- Groups take turns to display their posters to the class and to talk about what they do.
- Encourage the class to ask questions so that the activity is also interactive.
- After each presentation, the students display their poster on the wall of the classroom.

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for daily routines

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for routine (WB page 120).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures using words from the word bank.



WB p21 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 21.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

irLanguage.com

Aims:

- to present and practise animals
- to say a chant with the class

New language: zebra, monkey, hippo, parrot, snake, bear, tiger, crocodile, zoo

Recycled language: let's go, come on, it's fun

Materials: CD, flashcards (animals)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name some animals at the zoo.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animals

- Mime a known animal, e.g. a cat, or make a noise like a cat.
- Students guess. Elicit the spelling and write cat on the board.
- Repeat for other known animals.
- Circle the wild animals in one colour and the domestic animals in another.
- Pre-teach zoo and tell students that we can see the wild animals there.

Presentation

Aim: to present animals

- Use the flashcards to present each animal.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and elicit the animal names at random.

ISB p22 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise animals

- Students look at the plan of the zoo in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording.

CD1 Track 31

Whisper: What a great day! Thunder: I love the 200. Flash: Me too. Now say the words. 1 zebra. 2 monkey, 3 hippo. 4 parrot. 5 snake. 6 bear, 7 tiger, 8 crocodile

- Students point to the animals when they hear their names.
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the animal names.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

58 p22 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the animal names

- Students look at the chant.
- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant. in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the other claps the rhythm.
- Swap groups and repeat.

1 WB p22 Find the animals and write. Look →. ↓ and y.

Aim: to practise spelling

Key: Across: crocodile, monkey, mouse Down: parrot Diagonally: tiger, hippo, bear

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Mime one of the animals and make its sound.
- Students guess.
- The student who guesses correctly comes and mimes another animal and makes the sound.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise interactive speaking

- Students copy the outline zoo from SB Activity 1, but without the animals.
- Each student decides where to put the animals. draws them in the cages and labels the pictures.
- Tell students to draw a mouse too and to label it.


to present and practise the present simple third person singular affirmative and negative

New language: like, live, apples, bananas, carrots, chicken, spiders, tree

Recycled language: animals, cheese, peas

Materials: CD, flashcards (animals)

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about likes and dislikes.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animals

- Flash each flashcard quickly in front of the students in random order.
- Students call out the animal.
- Elicit the spelling from the class.

Presentation

Aim: to present the present simple third person singular affirmative and negative

- Draw pictures of a banana and an apple on the board.
 Pre-teach the vocabulary and write the words under the pictures.
- Draw a stick figure or an animal and give it a name, e.g. Henry.
- Point to the banana and Henry and say Henry likes bananas. Rub your stomach to emphasise the meaning. Write the sentence on the board.
- Do the same with apple, but say Henry doesn't like apples. Write the sentence on the board.
- Repeat using the students.

SB p23 Look, read and write the names.

Aim: to practise the present simple

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Do the first one as a class and check students know what to do.
- They read the sentences silently and individually and match them with the pictures.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers and understanding of vocabulary with the class.

Key: Tim, Bill, Ben, Monica, Tony, Mary

2 15B p23 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first sentence on the recording.
- Students repeat.

- Do the same for the second sentence.
- Students practise saying the sentences in pairs.

Draw an animal. Tell your friends about it.

Aim: to give students practice with descriptions

- Demonstrate the activity using the example on the Student's Book page.
- Check students know what to do.
- Each student draws an animal and makes notes about it: they don't write the text.
- In groups of three or four, students take turns to talk about their animals. Remind them to use the model from Activity 3.

1 WB p23 Listen and write the letters.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information

CD1 Track 34

- 1 Ben (kes bananas.
- 2 Martin doesn't like bananas.
- 3 Ruth likes apples.
- 4 Trudy doesn't like apples.
- 5 Daisy likes milk.
- 6 Jeff doesn't like milk.

Key: 2 M, 3 R, 4 T, 5 D, 6 J

1 W8 p23 Look at Activity 1. Write the words.

Aim: to practise the written form of the new language Key: 2 likes, 3 likes, 4 doesn't like, 5 likes, 6 doesn't like

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Write at least six known food words on the board, e.g. milk, chicken, apples.
- Students copy the list and put a tick or cross next to each to express likes and dislikes.
- Students swap papers.
- Elicit from different students some of their partner's likes and dislikes.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with writing the new language

 Students write the sentences about their partner from the Ending the lesson activity in their notebooks.

- to consolidate the present simple third person singular affirmative and negative
- to present the present simple third person singular question form with What
- to sing a song with the class

New language: sausages, lovely, sandwiches, please, someone

Recycled language: animals

Materials: CD, flashcards (animals)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to talk about likes and dislikes.

Warm-up

Aim: to review spelling of animal words

- Write the animal words (including mouse) in scrambled letter order on the board.
- In pairs, students unscramble them.
- Check with the class. Students come and write the word correctly under the jumbled word.

ISB p24 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books. Elicit which animals and foods they can see.
- Use the pictures to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in three groups.

SB p24 Ask and answer.

Aim: to present the present simple third person singular question form

- Demonstrate the activity, using the example. Say the question several times for students to repeat.
- Do the activity with the class, using open pairs. Check correct use and pronunciation of the question form and the responses.
- Students continue the activity in closed pairs.



I WB p24 Read the song. Match the animals' plates and the food they eat.

Aim: to practise the present simple third person

Key: zebra – carrots: hippo – bananas, apples: parrot – sandwiches, pizza

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Write the question form as in S8 Activity 2 in jumbled word order on the board. Do the same for two responses, one positive and one negative.
- Students work in pairs and put the words in the correct order.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise creativity

- Make groups of four.
- Each group writes a new verse for the Student's Book song, changing the animal and the food.
- Monitor the groups and give help as needed.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for groups to perform their new verses.



- to present and practise the present simple third person singular question form with inversion
- to present and practise the present simple third person singular short answers

New language: baby. fruit, sleep, swimming, play, a lot

Recycled language: animals

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer questions about likes and dislikes.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the present simple third person singular questions and answers

- Draw a simple 6 x 3 grid on the board. Along the top write six animal names. Down the side write three foods.
- Ask questions, e.g. What does the monkey like?
- Students invent answers using the foods, e.g. The monkey likes apples, but it doesn't like chicken.
- Put ticks and crosses in the grid.
- Students then ask and answer the questions and complete the grid.

Note: Keep the grid on the board until the end of the lesson.

SB p25 Read and draw lines.

Aim: to present the present simple third person singular questions and answers

- Give students time to look at the picture.
- Read the first question with the class and elicit the answer.
- Ask students what they notice about the question form (no question word).
- Students complete the activity silently and compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class using open pairs.
- Focus on answers b and c to show how the short answer is used.

Key: 1 b, 2 c, 3 d, 4 a

SB p25 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.
- Students take turns to practise the questions and answers in pairs.

158 p25 Look at the table. Ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with asking and answering questions

- Demonstrate the activity first.
- Put students into pairs. They take turns to ask and answer about Mark and Emma.
- Monitor to check and support as necessary.
- Elicit questions and answers in open pairs as a final check.

1) IWB p25 Look, read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to give students practice with the present simple questions and answers

Key: 1 b Yes, he does. 2 a Yes, he does. 2 b No, he doesn't. 3 a Yes, he does. 3 b No, he doesn't.



Think! WB p25 Match the questions with the answers.

Aim: to give students further practice with present simple question forms and to present object pronouns: it. her. him

Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2. 3, 4, (1), 5

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Use the grid from the Warm-up to review questions and answers.
- Point to an animal and a food and elicit a question with does.
- Elicit the answer by pointing to the tick or cross on the grid.
- Repeat for all the animals.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with writing the present simple third person affirmative

- Students use SB Activity 1 as a model.
- They each draw a picture of a baby animal.
- In pairs, they take turns to ask and answer about their baby animals.
- Under their picture they write a short text about their animal, e.g. This is my baby hippo. It sleeps ...

Alms:

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: Zoo Keeper, got you, throw, thank you all so much, snake, I can help

Recycled language: language from the story Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story. Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit things that happen on a bad day / a good day to review the previous episode.

1 SB pp26-27 The Zoo Keeper

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit who the students can see in the second picture.
- Pre-teach Zoo Keeper.
- Play the recording. Students listen for how the Super Friends help the Zoo Keeper (Flash catches the parrot; Thunder catches the hippo; Whisper catches the snake: Misty gets his keys back for him from the monkey).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of the things.)

1 WB p26 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD1 Track 39

T26

- Zoo Keeper: No, my keys! Don't throw them,
- 2 Misty: Here you are.
- 3 Thunder: Look at the monkey.

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 1st picture, 3 1st picture

2 W8 p26 Read the story. Then read and answ

Aim: to review the storyline

Key: 2 Does Misty catch the mankey? No, she doesn't. 3 Does Flash catch the parrot? Yes, she does.



Think! WB p26 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching Key: 2 Let's help him. 3 Come here, rabbit!

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of five.
- Students each take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review ideas and concepts from the story

- Write some key phrases from the story on the board.
- Elicit from students who says them.
- Focus on I can help. Elicit from students other ways they can help the Zoo Keeper, e.g. feed the animals.
- They draw a picture of how they can help and write the sentence underneath.

to talk about the meaning of the story

 to practise saying the long vowel sound ie Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story Recycled language: language from the story

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to identify and say the letter sound ie and its alternative spellings i e and y. They contrast it with the short letter sound i.

Value: helping people

Warm-up

Aim: to review phrases from the story

- Ask Who helps the Zoo Keeper? Write the four animals on the board.
- Elicit which Super Friend helps with which animal. Students mime how the Super Friends help.

SB p27 Match the Super Friends with the animals.

Aim: to focus students on the detail in the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Students complete the activity individually and then compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.
- Key: Misty monkey, Flash parrot, Thunder hippo, Whisper - snake

5B p27 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the letter sound ie

- Write my on the board, using a red pen for the y. Say m - y using the long vowel sound ie.
- Students repeat My keys! after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 6).

Key: The Zoo Keeper

\$8 p27 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the letter sound ie and its alternative spellings i e and y

 Play the recording. Students look at the picture, read and repeat.

CD1 Track 40 ie-ie-ie Mike flies by pies in the sky. Mike flies by pies in the sky!

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Explain that often the e at the end of a word makes the vowel say its name (e.g. like rhymes with the letter i, make rhymes with the letter a, and home with o).
- Ask How many pies? (There are nine.)
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values WB p27 Look and circle.



Aim: to focus students on the value of helping people Keu: Picture 2



WB p27 What's in Kim's bin? What's in Mike's pie? Say and write.

Aim: to practise contrasting the long vowel sound ie with the short vowel sound i

Listen, say and check your answers.

CD1 Track 41 Kim's bin: six, pink, hippo, pig Mike's pie: nine, white, spider, tiger

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review and write words with the letter sound ie and contrast it with the letter sound i

- Students close their Student's Books.
- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Students write two columns in their notebooks: i and ie. Say the words bin, pie, my, six, sit, big, nine, like. Pupils write the words in the correct column. Check answers as a class.
- Teach the special word I (as in I'm a teacher). pronounced ie.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of helping people

- Focus on the parts of the story where the Super Friends help the Zoo Keeper.
- Elicit from students why this value is important and examples of when they help people.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

- to practise reading, listening and writing skills
- to present can, can't

to present present simple questions with does
 Skills:

- Listening and reading for specific information
- writing from a model, interactive speaking

New language: lion, elephant, beautiful, head, hungry, café, delicious, talk, closes, open, what about

Recycled language: animals

Materials: CD. flashcards (animals)

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen and read for specific information. Your students will be able to ask and answer in pairs.

Your students will be able to write a description from a model.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animals

- Write Animals in a circle on the board.
- Elicit the animals students know and build a word map.
- Use flashcards to remind them of animals.
- Pre-teach and add the new animals for the lesson: lian. elephant.

58 p28 Read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning)

- Tell students that the text is about a zoo called Hipsway.
- Pre-teach delicious, beautiful, café, hungry, head, talk, open, close.
- Tell students to read the four statements first and to guess what the answers could be.
- Students read the text to find the answers.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class, eliciting the sentence from the text which gives the answer each time.
- Students do not need to read the whole text aloud.

Key: 1 yes, 2 yes, 3 no, 4 no

T28

2 58 p28 Listen and answer.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information

- Students read the questions before they listen.
- Play the recording. Students compare answers in pairs.

CD1 Track 42

Girl: Excuse me. Can Lask you about your parrot?

- Man: Of course. What do you want to know?
- Girl: What's his name?
- Man: Her name she's a girl is Many. That's M A R H.
- Girl: And where is she from? Mar: She's from Mexico.

Girl: Where does she live in Mexico? Man: In the jungle. She lives in the jungle.

- Girl: How old is she? Man: She's five years old. Girl: What does she eat? Man: Her favourite food is fruit and she really loves bananas. Girl: Wow! She's so beautiful. Man: Thank you, Would you like to hold her? Girl: Can I? Thanks.
- Play the recording again. Check answers with the class.
- Key: 1 The parrot is called Mary. 2 She's from Mexico. 3 She's five years old. 4 Her favourite food is fruit/ bananas.

ISB p28 Write about an animal. Can your friends guess what it is?

Aim: to practise writing a description

 Students take turns to read their descriptions to the class for students to guess.

1 WB p28 Listen and circle.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information

CD1 Track 43

- 1 Child: Does the bear eat carrots?
- Child: And does it live in the jungle?

Zoo Keeper: No. it doesn't.

Child: And does it live in

Zoo Keeper: No. It lives in

the jungle?

the desert.

This mouse eats little spiders,

- Zoo Keeper: Yes, it does. Zoo Keeper: No. It lives by rivers. This bear eats everything. 3 Child: Does the mouse eat Child: And does it come cheese?
- Child: And does it come from Canada? Zoo Keeper: No. It comes
- from China.
- Child: Does the hippo come from Africa?
 Zoo Keeper: Yes, it does.

Key: 1 b No, it doesn't. 2 a No, it doesn't. 2 b No, it doesn't. 3 a No, it doesn't. 3 b Yes, it does.

WB p28 Ask and answer.

Aim: to present and practise question forms with do

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise question forms with do

 In open pairs, students ask and answer questions using WB Activity 2 as a model.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise information transfer skills

Students draw three word maps: 1 Animal names.
 2 What animals eat, 3 Where animals live.



- to practise speaking skills
- to present and review prepositions of place
 Skills:
- listening for specific information
- speaking

New language: in, on, near, next to

Recycled language: animals, food, colours, tree, grass, hat

Materials: Unit 2 page 29 stickers

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to speak about a picture.

Warm-up

Aim: to review prepositions of place

- Using classroom objects, teach and review prepositions of place.
- Give students instructions, e.g. Put your ruler in your book.
- Review in, on, near and next to.

SB p29 Listen to your teacher and stick.

Aim: to practise listening skills 🕅

 Students prepare their stickers (cheese, ball, hat, flower, bananas).

Note: In order to carry out this activity, students will first need to cut out their stickers with the backs attached.

- Say the words. Students hold up the relevant sticker.
- Give instructions for students to follow, e.g. Put the hat on the hippo. Put the flower in the water. Put the bananas near the monkey.
- Students compare their pictures in pairs.

23 58 p29 Look and say.

Aim: to practise speaking skills

- Demonstrate the activity for the class by saying where one of the stickers is.
- Students do the activity in pairs, taking turns to say where each sticker is.
- Students hide their Student's Books from each other.
 Student A puts his/her stickers in different places and tells Student B where they are. Student B listens and puts his/her stickers in the same place.
- Students look and check.
- Students swap roles.
- Finally students stick their stickers in the correct places (from Activity 1).

WB p29 Read and choose a word from the box. Write the correct word next to numbers 2–6.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail Key: 2 black, 3 zoo, 4 grass, 5 water, 6 monkey

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review prepositions

- Elicit sentences from SB Activity 1 to describe where things are.
- Students write the sentences in their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to give further practice with writing

- Individually, students choose an animal and draw a picture of it.
- They use the text in WB Activity 1 as a model and write a text about their animal.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Science

Thinking skills: categorising and classifying

New language: family group, part of, features, different from, mammal, reptile, insect, lizard, owl, duck, butterfly, beetle, hair, lay, egg, scales, blood, feathers, warm

Recycled language:animals

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Science in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animals

- Elicit the animals students know onto the board.
- Ask students if they are all the same. Prompt them to think of differences, e.g. Some can fly. Some have babies.

1 158 p30 Listen and read about animal family groups.

Aim: to introduce the concept of animal groups

- Play the recording. Students follow the text silently in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding with reference to the Warm-up activity.

Think! | 58 p30 Look at some groups and write the missing features.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate the concept of animal groups

Thinking skill: applying world knowledge

- Read the family name of each group aloud and discuss the features given and the example animals.
- Elicit other animals from that group, using students' experience and/or examples from the Warm-up.
- Individually, students choose which feature matches with which group.
- They compare and discuss their ideas in pairs.
- When everyone has finished, check with the class.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.
- Elicit other family groups that students know, with their examples and features, e.g. amphibians, fish.
- Key: Mammals: their babies drink milk, Birds: can often fly, Reptiles: lay eggs, Insects: have six legs

1W8 p30 Match the pictures with the words.

Aim: to consolidate understanding of new vocabulary Key: 2 a, 3 d, 4 b, 5 e

WB p30 Write m (mammal) / b (bird) / r (reptile) / i (insect).

Aim: to consolidate understanding of animal groupings Key: 2 b, i, 3 m, 4 i, 5 r, 6 m

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today, e.g. animal families, features of different animal families.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to extend students' understanding of animal families

- Write the other animal families you elicited from the class at the end of SB Activity 2 on the board.
- Name some other animals for students to match with the categories. Give the animal names in L1 first if necessary.
- Elicit other features for some of the animal families.
 Write these on the board.

- to extend the focus on Science through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: tortoise, fox, toucan, bee

Recycled language: animal families

Materials: Unit 2 page 31 stickers, scissors (optional), poster paper for each group of students, animal magazines, scissors, glue, reference books, the Internet

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Science in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animal families

- Write an animal from each family group on the board.
- Elicit the family group and its features.
- Elicit other animals from each group.

Think! 58 p31 Look and stick in the animal family groups.

Aim: to review and extend what students have learnt about family groups

Thinking skills: classifying and categorising

 Students prepare their stickers (tortoise, toucan, bee, cow, penguin, fly, snake, fax).

Note: You may wish students to cut out their stickers with the backs attached before carrying out this activity.

- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: mammals – fox, cow; birds – penguin, toucan; reptiles – snake, tortoise; insects – bee, fly

Project | SB p31 Make an animal family group display.

Aim: to enable students to build on their knowledge and experience about animal families

- Elicit other animal families from students, e.g. fish, amphibians.
- Students work in groups and produce posters about one of the other animal families. Each group works on a different animal family.
- Help and advise groups as necessary.
- Groups display and orally present their posters to the class.



Aim: to encourage students to make use of their own knowledge and experience

Key: 2 duck, 3 shark, 4 fox, 5 beetle, 6 lizard



Think! WE p31 Write the words. Then write m (mammal). b (bird), r (reptile). f (fish) or i (insect).

Aim: to consolidate understanding of family groupings Thinking skills: identifying and classifying

Key: 2 lizard r. 3 shark m. 4 tortoise r. 5 duck b. 6 fox m

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today Tve...
- Elicit from students what they learnt today. e.g. learnt more about animal family groupings and I've made a poster about an animal family.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop logical-mathematical thinking

- Students work in groups of four.
- Students use the code in WB Activity 1 and draw the words for six animals.
- They swap their codes and write the animal words under each one.
- They swap their work back and check.
- Students discuss which family group the animals are from.

 to draw out the students' creativity through mental imagery

New language: half. very. frog. breakfast, honey

Recycled language: animals, animal families, colours, imperatives

Materials: CD, paper, wool, tape and glue, coloured pens and pencils, scissors

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to ideas and respond creatively.

Your students will be able to follow written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animal names

- Draw a strange animal on the board, e.g. half crocodile and half lion.
- Elicit what it is and pre-teach half.

158 p32 Listen and imagine. Then draw your picture.

Aim: to enable students to listen and visualise and to create their own pictures

- Tell students to put their heads on their desks, close their eyes and listen.
- Play the recording. At the end of the recording, speak quietly and tell students to listen again and imagine. Tell them they are going to draw the picture from their heads.

CD1 Track 45

Imagine you are in the jungle, Listen to all those strange noises. There are birds. And insects. Was that a lion? And what was that? What a beautiful place! Suddenly you see something. What is it? A bird? An insect? A mammal? It's different. Is it half animal and half bird? Is it half reptile and half mammal? What a strange animal! Draw it.

- Play the recording again.
- Students draw their own pictures of what they imagined.
- Go around the class and encourage students.
- Talk to them about their ideas and help if necessary.

SB p32 Show your picture to your friends.

Aim: to give students practice in describing a picture

- Read the examples from the Student's Book with the class.
- Remind students to use adjectives and other words to make their talk more interesting.
- Put students into groups of four for the descriptions.
- Volunteer students describe their pictures to the class.



Aim: to enable students to follow a set of instructions to make a zoo

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to compare their pictures

- Display students' pictures from SB Activity 2 on tables or on the walls.
- Have students go around and see how many different animal combinations they can find.
- Ask the students which pictures use the same animals.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to exploit the zoos they have made

- Demonstrate for the class. Put the finger puppets on your fingers and introduce each puppet to the class (as if the puppet is speaking), e.g. Hello. I'm Mary the Monkey. I like ...
- Students do the same in groups of three.



Alms:

- · to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

New language: dangerous, you're welcome

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (animals), reference materials, a cap and broom (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to act out a play.

Warm-up

Aim: to review animals

- Use the flashcards to review animals.
- Show each flashcard quickly to the class. Students say the animal.
- Elicit other animals they have learnt about in this unit.

SB p33 Look, read and plan.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their knowledge of animals and their habits, to encourage students to plan their work

- Discuss the stages of the activity with the class.
- Make sure students know what they have to do. Put them into pairs.
- Tell students that they can choose another animal for their play, research it and write their own fact sheet to work from.
- Monitor and help pairs as necessary.
- Remind them to practise and rehearse their role plays.

SB p33 Act out your play.

Aim: to give students practice with productive and interactive speaking

- Invite pairs to come to the front of the class to act out their plays. The Zoo Keeper can dress up if you wish.
- In big classes, pairs can act out their plays in groups.
- Give students a listening task to make sure they concentrate, e.g. to write one piece of information about each animal.

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for animals

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for animals (WB page 121).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures using words from the word bank.



WB p33 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 33.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise places in a town
- to say a chant with the class

New language: playground, cinema, swimming pool, park, hospital, bus stop, shop, street, café, train station, looking from up here, yes, we can

Recycled language: school

Materials: CD, flashcards (places in a town)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name some places in a town.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of town

- Ask different students Where do you live? to review names of streets and buildings.
- Ask questions using known words, e.g. Do you live near the park/school?

Presentation

Aim: to present places in a town

- Use the flashcards to present each place in a town.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and elicit the place names at random.

158 p34 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise places in a town

- Students look at the plan of the town in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording.

CD2 Track O2

Thunder: Wowl It's great up here. Misty: I can see the school. Flash: Look, over there! Now say the words. 1 playground, 2 cinema, 3 swimming pool, 4 park, 5 hospital, 6 bus stop, 7 shop, 8 street, 9 café, 10 train station

- Students point to the places when they hear the words.
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the place names.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

258 p34 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the place names

- Use the picture to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the other claps the rhythm.
- Swap groups and repeat.

1 WB p34 Look and draw lines.

Aim: to practise identification of places

WB p34 Match and write the words.

Aim: to practise spelling and chunking in words Key: 2 café, 3 shop, 4 park, 5 hospital, 6 school

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Flash each flashcard quickly in front of the class.
- Students say what it is.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise interactive speaking

- This is an extension of the Warm-up.
- Provide an oral model for students to work from by telling them about where you live, e.g. My flat is near the school. I can walk to the train station. There are some shops near my house.
- Students take turns to say some sentences about where they live.



 to present and practise have got: affirmative, questions and short answers

New language: town

Recycled language: places in a town

Materials: CD, flashcards (places in a town)

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about what is in their town using have got.

Warm-up

Aim: to review places in a town

- Display the flashcards in a line on the board.
- Elicit each word.
- Take one flashcard away. Elicit all the places, including the word for the missing flashcard.
- Continue taking away flashcards until there are none on the board.
- Students say the words from memory.
- Replace the flashcards one by one in the same way.

Presentation

Aim: to present have got

- Draw a simple map of a town on the board. Pre-teach town.
- Draw and label four places, e.g. cinema, shop.
- Say, e.g. The town has got a shop.
- Repeat for the other places.
- Say negative sentences for places not on the map.
- Check understanding at each stage.

SB p35 Look at the picture. Read and circle.

Aim: to practise have got

- Students look at the picture.
- Check they know what to do.
- They read the questions silently and individually and circle the answers.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 1 Yes, it has. 2 No, it hasn't.

2 58 p35 Listen and say.

Aim: to present question forms and short answers and to focus students on grammatical form

- Present the question form using the map from the Presentation stage above.
- Play the first question and answer on the recording.
- Students repeat.

- Do the same for the second question and answer.
- Students practise asking and answering in pairs.



Aim: to give students practice with using have got

- Demonstrate the activity by making your own list and using the example on the Student's Book page as a model.
- Check students know what to do.
- Each student imagines a town and writes a list of the places. They don't show their partner.
- In pairs, they take turns to ask and answer.

Think! WB p35 Tick (/) the box.

Aim: to give further practice with has got Thinking skills: paying close visual attention and interpreting

Key: 2 Yes, it has. 3 No, it hasn't. 4 Yes, it has. 5 No, it hasn't. 6 Yes, it has.

2 WB p35 Write about your town.

Aim: to practise writing a description of a town

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Write some of the town words in scrambled letter order on the board.
- Students unscramble them in pairs.
- Elicit the correct spelling and write the words on the board.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Play a bingo game with the class.
- Students each draw 2 x 2 grids.
- Display the flashcards on the board and number them 1–10.
- Students write four numbers, one in each square.
- Say the places at random. If students have the number corresponding to the place, they make a cross in the square.
- The first student to cross all four squares and call out Bingol is the winner.

- to consolidate have got
- to sing a song with the class

New language: slide, swings, stay

Recycled language: places in a town

Materials: CD, flashcards (places in a town)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to listen and sequence pictures.

Warm-up

Aim: to review spelling of town words

- Write the first two letters of the town words on the board.
- In pairs, students complete the words without looking in their books.
- Check with the class. Students come and select the correct flashcards and write the words on the board.

SB p36 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book. Elicit which places they can see.
- Use the picture to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in three groups.



Think 58 p36 Listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise listening and reading skills Thinking skills: comparing and sequencing

- Students look at the small pictures first.
- Play the recording. They listen and number the things they hear. Remind them to look at the large picture at the top of the page to help them.
- Students compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class, playing the recording again if necessary.

Key: 4, 1, 3, 2



WB p36 Read the song again and tick (/) the boxes to find the town. Then do the maze.

Aim: to practise reading skills and to develop spatial awareness

Thinking skill: matching written and visual information

Key: shops, park, swimming pool

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

Students sing the song again from SB Activity 1.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise creativity

- Make groups of four.
- Each group writes a new verse for the Student's Book song, changing the places so that it is true about their town. If they do not live in a town, then students can imagine a perfect town.
- Monitor the groups and give help as needed.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for groups to perform their new verses.

- to present and practise between, behind, in front of, next to
- to proctise reading skills

New language: toy shop, sweet shop

Recycled language: places in a town

Materials: CD, Unit 3 cut-outs SB page 125

Language competences: Your students will be able to say where places are in a town using prepositions of place.

Warm-up

Aim: to review known prepositions in, on, near, next to

- Use classroom objects to review prepositions of place.
- Place a school bag next to a student and ask another student where it is.
- Repeat for the other known prepositions.

1 58 p37 Listen and write the words.

Aim: to present and practise prepositions: between. behind, in front of, next to

- Present the new prepositions in the same way as in the Warm-up.
- Write the four new prepositions on the board.
- Give students time to study the plan and to read the sentences.
- Students write the answers in pencil.
- Play the recording for students to listen and check.

CD2 Track O8

- The cafe is between the school and the cinema.
- The car is in front of the cafe.
- 3 The hospital is next to the train station.
- 4 The free is behind the cinema.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.

Key: 1 cinema, 2 café. 3 train station. 4 cinema

2 SB p37 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.
- Students take turns to practise the sentences in pairs.

0

58 p37 Decide where to put these places on your map.

Now tell your partner about your map.

Aim: to give students practice in using prepositions of place

- Students prepare the Unit 3 cut-outs.
- Students use one map to draw their map as in the instructions. They use the other map to draw their partner's map as they listen to his/her description.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- Tell them not to look at each other's maps when they draw and label the places.
- In the pair work activity, Student A describes his/her town and Student B draws it. Then they swap roles.

0

W8 p37 Look at the tree and match the pictures with the words.

Aim: to give students practice with prepositions Key: 2 d. 3 a, 4 b

2 W8 p37 Read and write the words.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information

Key (from left to right): swimming pool, playground, park, toy shop, school

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Invite four students to come to the front.
- Give them instructions, e.g. (Name), stand between (name) and (name). (Name), sit in front of them.
- Repeat with other students and other instructions.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with prepositions and places in a town

- Students use W8 Activity 2 as a model.
- They each draw a simple map of a town with places to label.
- They write a short text about the town, as in the model.
- Students swap texts and complete each other's maps.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: track, is leaving, kids, fast, train driver, stop, tree, train

Recycled language: language from the story Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story. Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the Zoo Keeper in the previous episode and how the Super Friends help him. (Flash catches the parrot, Thunder catches the hippo. Whisper catches the snake, Misty takes the keys from the monkey.)

1 SB pp38-39 The tree on the track

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit the place the students can see in the first picture.
- Pre-teach track.
- Play the recording. Students listen for what the problem is (a tree on the track) and for how Flash stops the train (she writes STOP out of dust).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of the things.)

1 W8 p38 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD2 Track 11

- Misty: But there's a tree on the track!
- 2 Flash: Stop! Stop the train!
- 3 Driver: She's next to my train again. What does she want?

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 1st picture, 3 2nd picture



Think! | WB p38 Match the questions about the story with the answers.

Aim: to check understanding of the story Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 e, 3 a, 4 f, 5 d, 6 b



Think! WB p38 Number the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: sequencing Key: 5, (8), (4), 3, 7, 2, 6, (1)

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of five.
- Students each take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review ideas and concepts from the story

- Write some key phrases from the story on the board.
- Elicit from students who says them.
- Elicit from students other ideas for how Flash can stop the train.

T38

- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise consonant blends containing the letter sound r as in train, green, crocodile, dress and brush
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: language from the story

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to decode and say consonant blends at the beginning of words.

Note: Words beginning with wr are always pronounced r (e.g. write = rite).

Value: perseverance

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. What is on the track? What does Flash do to stop the train? What does the driver say at the end?

ISB p39 Point to pictures in the story and make sentences.

Aim: to focus students on the detail in the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- Students complete the activity individually and then compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.
- Key: 1 The Super Friends are on the hill. 3 The driver is in the train. 1 The tree is on the track. 3 Flash is next to the train. 6 Flash is in front of the train. 1 The train is in the station.

E) \$8 p39 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the consonant blend tr

- Write tree on the board, using a red pen for the tr. Blend the word by saying the consonants together: tr – ee.
- Students repeat But there's a tree on the track! after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 1).

Key: Misty

SB p39 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise consonant clusters at the beginning of words

 Play the recording. Students look at the picture, read and repeat.

CD2 Track 12 tr - tr - tr

qr - qr - qr

dr-dr-dr

Troy's grandpa's got a great big green dragon.

Troy's grandpa's got a great big green dragon!

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.



Values | WB p39 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of perseverance Key: Picture 2

2 WB p39 Look and write.

Aim: to practise consonant blends at the beginning of words

3 1WB p39 Listen, say and check your answers.

CD2 Track 13

1 tree, 2 have breakfast, 3 get dressed. 4 brush your teeth. 5 crocodile, 6 grandmother, 7 train driver

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review words with consonant blends containing r

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Write tr, gr, cr, br and dr on the board. Individually or in teams, students come to the front and write words starting with the consonant blends.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of perseverance

- Focus on the parts of the story where Flash didn't give up.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students have persevered with something.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

- to practise reading, speaking and writing skills Skills:
- reading for specific information
- reading for detail
- writing from a model

New language: popcorn, pizza, rice, chips, grandmother

Recycled language: places in a town

Materials: CD, flashcards (places in a town)

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Your students will be able to write a description from a model.

Warm-up

Aim: to review places and what people do there

- Hold up a flashcard, e.g. park, and elicit what it is and what students can do there.
- Repeat for four or five other places in a town.

58 p40 Read and write the names.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning)

- Tell students that the text is about two people's favourite places.
- Pre-teach popcom, pizza, rice and chips.
- Tell students to read the texts quickly and write the names.
- Students read the texts to find the answers.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class.

Keu: Martin – cinema, Isabelle – café

58 p40 Read again and answer.

Aim: to practise reading for detail

- Students read the questions before they re-read the texts.
- Students compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class. Elicit the parts of the text. where they found the answers. Students can read these sections aloud, but not the whole text.
- Key: 1 Three. 2 Popcorn or sweets. 3 Her mum and her brother, 4 Pizza and chips.

58 p40 Write about your favourite place.

Aim: to practise writing a description

Students work individually or in pairs.



Aim: to practise reading aloud

Students take turns to read out their descriptions.



Think W8 p40 Listen and write S (Sarah), O (Oscar), or C (Cheryl).

Aim: to practise listening for specific information Thinking skills: selecting and interpreting pictures

CD2 Track 14

Interviewer: Hello, Sarah, What's your Interviewer: When do you favourite place in town? go there? Oscar: On Friday and Saturday. Sarah: it's the zoo. Interviewer: The 200, Interesting, Interviewer: What do you do Sarah: I go there with Mary. there? She's my best friend. Oscar: Ch. it's fun. We play Interviewer: When do you go there? games. Interviewer: Hi, Cheryl, What's Sarah: On Saturday. Interviewer: Do you ride horses there? your favourite place in town? Sarah: No. We feed the ducks. Cherul: It's the park. I meet We like them. my friends there, Interviewer: Hi, Oscar, What's your Interviewer: Your friends? Cherul: Vies, there are eight of favourite place in town? us and we play football every Oscar: It's the playground. Wednesday and Friday.

Interviewer: Reallu?

Oscar: I go there with Lucy and Ben.

Key: Where? O. C. (S). With? (S). O. C. When? O. (S). C. What? (S), O, C

Think WB p40 What is Tom's favourite place? Read and write.

Aim: to proctise reading skills Thinking skill: problem solving Keu: Library or bookshop

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review language from the lesson

- Write the places on the board or use the flashcards.
- Take a show of hands to find out which is the class's favourite place. Elicit reasons why.
- Elicit reasons why from the students who chose it.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with information transfer skills

 Students draw a picture of their favourite place and write: This is my favourite place because ...



to practise listening skills

Skills:

Listening for specific information

New language: ham, pounds, cute

Recycled language: places in a town, food, animals

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review places and what people do

- Play a guessing game. Say, e.g. I want to have something to eat. Where am I? (café).
- Repeat for the other places in a town. Use different prompts, e.g. I can see some water. Where am I? (swimming pool or park).

USB p41 Listen and tick (/) the box. Where are they?

Aim: to practise listening skills (11)

- Tell students to study the pictures in the Student's Book before they listen.
- Play the recording straight through to the end.

CD2 Track 15

- Man: Can I have a sandwich, please? Woman: Sure, Cheese or ham? Man: Ham, And I'd like some orange juice too. Woman: One ham sandwich and one orange juice, That's £4, please.
- 2 Boy: Can I go on the swings. Dad? Man: Of course you can. Girl: I want to go on the slide. Man: OK, but be careful.
- Boy: What film do you want to see?
 Girl: Let's see The Super Friends.
 Boy: Good idea. When does it start?
 Girl: At four o'clock, We've got ten minutes.
 Boy: Great. Let's get some popcorn.
- 4 Girl 1: Can you see the horses? Girl 2: Yeah, Look, there's a baby horse too, Girl 1: Ahhh, it's so cute,
- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1 b, 2 b, 3 c, 4 a



WB p41 Look at the pictures and the letters. Write the words.

Aim: to give students practice in spelling 🕅

Key: 2 shops, 3 cinema, 4 station, 5 hospital. 6 playground

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review spelling out

- Spell out some of the words from this and the previous lesson, e.g. P O P C O R N.
- Students guess the word as quickly as they can.
- The student who guesses correctly spells out another word for the class to guess.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise speaking skills

- Write the first dialogue from SB Activity 1 on the board.
- Students practise it in pairs. Encourage them to change the foods and the prices.
- Pairs role play their dialogues for the class.

to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Art

Thinking skills: interpreting and giving opinions

New language: painting, building, stars, sky, café

Recycled language: places in a town, colours, water, beautiful

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Art in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to review colours

- Play a game, Say, e.g. I can see something and it's blue and green. Students look around the room and quess what it is.
- The student who guesses correctly continues the game.

SB p42 Look and say. What is in the paintings?

Aim: to encourage students to interpret and give opinions

- Students look at the paintings. Elicit some of the things they can see in the first painting.
- In pairs, students talk about the other paintings.
- Discuss as a class, encouraging students to describe the colours and to offer interpretations using, e.g. I think ... / It looks like ...

Think! | SB p42 Listen, read and number. Which painting are they talking about?

Aim: to practise listening skills

Thinking skill: paying attention to details in a picture

- Give students time to look at the pictures in Activity 1 again before they read and listen.
- Play the recording. Students read the text silently as they listen.

CD2 Track 16

I like the water and the big buildings. It's beautiful, I like the colours. Yellow, purple and green. Id like to play there, I like this painting because I like trains. There are lots of stars in the sky, I like them,

- They number the speech bubbles and compare their answers in pairs.
- Students read the texts again to make sure of their answers.
- Check with the class.
- Key: 1.4.3.2

58 p42 Which painting is your favourite?

Aim: to encourage students to express preferences and give reasons

- Students choose their favourite picture individually. Tell them to think about why they chose it.
- Students discuss their choices and reasons in aroups of four.
- Discuss as a class.



Think WB p42 Look and draw lines. Then talk with a friend.

Aim: to encourage students to make use of their own knowledge and experience

Thinking skills: spatial and visual

Key: b 3. c 2. d 3. e 1. f 2

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today. e.g. paintings and how to describe them.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to extend students' ability to express their preferences

- Students write a short text about the painting they chose in SB Activity 3. They write about what they can see in it, and why they like it.
- Provide useful words on the board before students start writing.
- Go around the class checking students' first drafts.
- Then students write their final drafts on paper.
- Display the pieces of paper in four places around the room, one place for each of the paintings in the Student's Book.





- to extend the focus on Art through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: wall, playground, train station, school, building

Recycled language: places in a town

Materials: poster paper, coloured paper, scissors, coloured pens, glue, a painting for the Warm-up (optional), six photocopies of different paintings, each cut into eight pieces (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Art in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review language to talk about paintings

- Tell students to look again at the paintings on SB page 42 or display the painting you have brought.
- Prompt students to describe the painting(s) and to tell you why they like or don't like it/them.

S8 p43 Where are these paintings?

Aim: to review and extend what students have learnt about art and paintings

- Talk about the first painting with the class. Ask them where it is and what they can see in it.
- In pairs, students talk about the other paintings and say where they are.
- Elicit and discuss each painting as a class.

Key: 2 in a train station. 3 in a school. 4 on a house

Use p43 Where can you find paintings in your town?

Aim: to enable students to reflect on their own knowledge and experience

- Put students into groups of three to discuss the question before discussing ideas as a class.
- If students do not name any places, tell them where they can see paintings in the town.



Project SB p43 Make pictures of your town and create a collage.

Aim: to enable students to express their creativity

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Make groups of three or four. Supply each group with scissors, magazines and pens.
- They choose, cut out and draw pictures for their collage.
- Hand out the poster paper for students to practise laying out their towns.

- When you have seen each group's town, hand out glue.
- Groups display and orally present their posters to the class.

1 WB p43 Colour and talk about the picture.

Aim: to encourage individual expression

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. learnt about where there are paintings in our town and I've made a collage.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop spatial and visual awareness

- Divide the class into six groups.
- Hand out a cut up painting to each group. Students organise the pieces to put the painting back together.
- Groups pass the pieces on to the next group.
- Repeat until all the groups have done all the paintings.

- to stimulate the students' imagination through listening and acting out
- New language: gone, steps, watch

Recycled language: places in a town, imperatives

Materials: CD, boxes and tubes, tape and glue, coloured paper. tissue, coloured pens

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen and do actions to demonstrate meaning.

Your students will be able to follow auditory. written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review instructions

- Give a student some simple instructions to follow, e.g. Stand up. Walk to the door. Turn around. Come back to your chair.
- Repeat, giving similar instructions to other students.

Then listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions and in sequencing information

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording and mime the actions.

CD2 Track 17

- 1 Walk up the steps to the station.
- 2 Buyaticket.
- 3 Buy a magazine and read it.
- 4 Go to the cafe, Buy some orange juice.
- 5 Drink your juice.
- 6 Look at your watch. Oh no!
- 7 Run to the platform.
- 8 Where's your train? It's gone!
- Mime the actions without the recording and teach the new language through mime.
- Play the recording again and mime the actions. Students mime the actions with you.
- Students listen again and sequence the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 8, 1, 6, 3, 5, 4, 2, 7

ISB p44 Read and number the sentences from the story.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail

- Read the eight instructions aloud.
- Students individually match the instructions with the pictures.

- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check by asking one student to read an instruction aloud, another to mime the action and another to say the number.

Key (from left to right): 4, 2, 8, 5, 7, 6, 3, 1

SB p44 Listen to your friend and act out.

Aim: to give students practice in giving and following instructions

- Demonstrate the activity by giving the instructions in random order for the class to follow.
- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Invite more confident students to role play their instructions in front of the class.

1) W8 p44 Make a box town.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of visual and written instructions to make a box town

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

 Play a game of 'Simon says' using the instructions from SB page 44 Activity 2. When you say Simon says before the instruction, students mime it. When you do not say Simon says, students do not mime it.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to compare and discuss their box towns

- Put students into groups of four.
- They take turns to describe their box towns and say where the places are, using the prepositions.

T44)



- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (places in a town)

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to do a quiz.

Warm-up

Aim: to review places in a town

- Use the flashcards to review places in a town.
- Show each flashcard quickly to the class. Students say the place and what they can do there.

1) SB p45 Quiz time

Aim: to enable students to review language from the unit by doing a quiz

- Students do the quiz in pairs. The first time they do it without looking back through the unit.
- Pairs check their work with other pairs.
- Students then look back to check answers they did not know.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 1 b. 2 a. 3 b. 4 a. 5 c. 6 b. 7 a. 8 a

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for places in a town

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for towns (WB page 122).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures using words from the word bank.



WB p45 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 45.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise food
- to say a chant with the class

New language: grapes, beans, bread, lemons, tomatoes, fish, eggs, mangos, watermelons, potatoes, hungry, thirsty, market, fruit, vegetables

Recycled language: apples

Materials: CD, flashcards (food), an apple (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name some food.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of market

- Draw an apple on the board (or show one if you have one in your bag).
- Elicit what it is and write the name.
- Elicit other foods students know, e.g. banana.
- Draw a circle on the board and write Market in the middle.
- Tell students that this is where we can buy different fruit and vegetables.
- Start to build a word map with the elicited food words.

Presentation

Aim: to present food words

- Use the flashcards to present each item of food.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board around the word map and elicit the words at random.

16 SB p46 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise food

- Students look at the picture of the morket in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording.

CD2 Track 18

Flash: I'd like some apples, please, Man: How many? Flash: Eight, please, Now say the words, 1 grapes, 2 beans, 3 bread, 4 lemons, 5 tomatoes, 6 fish, 7 eggs, 8 mangos, 9 watermelons, 10 potatoes

- Students point to the foods when they hear the words.
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the food words.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

SB p46 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the food

- Use the picture to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the other claps the rhythm.
- Swap groups and repeat.

1) W8 p46 Do the crossword.

Aim: to practise spelling of the new vocabulary

Key: 2 watermelon, 3 tomatoes, 4 lemon, 5 mango, 6 potatoes, 7 eggs, 8 beans, 9 grapes, 10 fish

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Flash each flashcard quickly in front of the class.
- Students say what it is.
- Place each flashcard back on the board around the word map.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise memorisation and speaking

- Focus students on the word map on the board.
- Say, e.g. In my bag I've got some mangos. Student A chooses another fruit or vegetable and says, e.g. In my bag I've got some mangos and a lemon.
- Continue the list, choosing students at random, until there are about eight items.
- Start another list.

- to present and practise questions and responses: Would you like a/some ... ? Yes, please / No, thank you.
- to present and practise articles: a, an, some

Recycled language: food

Materials: CD, flashcards (food)

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask questions and respond.

Warm-up

Aim: to review food

- Play a guessing game. Say, e.g. I'm thinking of some food. It's yellow and looks like this (make a shape with your hand).
- Students try to guess. When a student guesses correctly, show the flashcard to confirm.
- The student comes to the front, secretly chooses a flashcard and continues the game.

Presentation

Aim: to present Would you like a/some ... ? Yes, please. / No, thank you.

- Hold out the tomatoes to a student. Say Would you like some tomatoes?
- Prompt the student to say Yes and supply Yes, please.
- Repeat with a different flashcard but prompt No.
- Practise offering flashcards around the class.
- Focus students on the use of a/some.
- Hand out the flashcards to students. They practise asking and answering in open pairs.

58 p47 Read and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book.
- Do the first one as a class and check students know what to do.
- They read the speech bubbles silently and individually and number the pictures.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 3, 4, 1, 2

2 10 ISB p47 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first question and answer on the recording.
- Students repeat.
- Do the same for the second question and answer.
- Students practise asking and answering in pairs. They
 can include the other foods.

S8 p47 Tick (*) four things you would like to eat. Then ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice making and responding to polite requests

- Demonstrate the activity by choosing your own four items and having students ask you Would you like ... ?
- Check students know what to do.
- Each student chooses four things and then they ask and answer in pairs.
- Monitor and help.
- Check using open pairs.

WB p47 Write a, an or some.

Aim: to practise articles with singular and plural nouns

Key: 2 a. 3 an. 4 some, 5 an

W8 p47 Put the words in order.

Aim: to practise word order in polite requests

Key: 2 Would you like a mango? 3 Would you like some bread? 4 Would you like some fish?

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Hand out the flashcards to ten students.
- They take turns to offer them to other students around the class.
- Students who say Yes, please take the flashcard and offer it in turn to another student.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Make groups of six. Students draw and cut out foods to make a market display.
- Two students role play the market sellers. The others role play customers.
- Pre-teach Here you are / Thank you / It's xx pounds.
- Groups set up their markets and do their role plays.



- to consolidate questions and food vocabulary
- to sing a song with the class

New language: really great, plate, put, keep, too

Recycled language: food

Materials: CD, flashcards (food)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review spelling of food words

- Hold up each flashcard in turn. Don't say the word.
- Students write the words in their notebooks.
- They compare their answers and spellings in pairs.
- Check with the class.

158 p48 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book. Elicit which foods they can see.
- Use the picture to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in three groups.

15B p48 Listen again and tick (~) the fruit that you hear in the song.

Aim: to practise listening and reading skills

- Students look at the small pictures first and identify the fruit.
- Play the recording. They listen, read the song and tick the things they hear.
- Students compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class, playing the recording again if necessary.
- Key: 1st picture mango, 3rd picture apple, 6th picture – grapes



WB p48 Look at the pictures and the letters Write the words.

Aim: to practise spelling

Key: 2 grapes. 3 mango, 4 banana, 5 orange, 6 watermelon

W8 p48 Draw your favourite fruit and write.

Aim: to encourage students to express their own preferences

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Brainstorm all the food from this lesson and from previous lessons.
- Write the words on the board.
- Draw two circles. Write Fruit in one and Vegetables in the other.
- Students try to classify the food.

Note: Some will not fit in this classification, e.g. fish, chicken, eggs. Elicit from students what type of food these are.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise creativity

- Make groups of four.
- Each group writes a new verse for the Student's Book song, changing the fruits for their favourite ones.
- Monitor the groups and give help as needed.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for groups to perform their new verses.

- to present and practise Are there / Is there and short answers
- to practise listening skills

New language: fridge, basket, sweets

Recycled language: food

Materials: CD, Unit 4 stickers

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer about food.

Warm-up

Aim: to review foods

- Write the following food words in jumbled letter order on the board: grapes, tomatoes, bread, cake, milk, sweets.
- Students work individually to work out what each word is.
- Don't check their answers until after SB Activity 1.

158 p49 Listen and write the words.

Aim: to present and practise Are there ... ? Is there ... ?

- Give students time to look at the picture and read the sentences.
- Check they know what to do. Tell them that the food words are in jumbled order on the board.
- Play the recording for students to listen and write.

CD2 Track 24

- 1 Are there any grapes?
- 2 Are there any tomatoes?
- 3 is there any bread?
- 4 There isn't any cake.
- 5 is there any mik?
- 6 There aren't any sweets.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.
- Elicit the words and the correct spelling from students.
- Group the words on the board as follows: Group 1: bread, cake, milk, Group 2: grapes, tomatoes, sweets.
- Write two questions and two statements on the board, one with is and one with are.
- Underline any and elicit from students when we use is and when we use are with reference to the two word groups on the board.

Key: 1 grapes, 2 tomatoes, 3 bread, 4 cake, 5 milk, 6 sweets

SB p49 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.

- Repeat.
- Students take turns to practise the questions and answers in pairs.

ISB p49 Choose where to stick your food. Then ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Pre-teach fridge and basket.
- Students prepare their stickers. Elicit what each one is.

Note: In order to carry out this activity, students will first need to cut out their stickers with the backs attached.

- Students choose individually: they put five in the fridge and five in the basket.
- They do not show their partner.
- In pairs, they take turns to ask and answer to find out what their partner has got in his/her fridge and basket.
- They note down the items which they have in common.
- Provide the questions Are there any ... in your basket/ fridge? and the answers Yes/No, there ...
- Monitor and check as pairs are working.



Think! WB p49 Look, read and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to give students practice with vocabulary Thinking skills: paying close visual attention and interpreting

Key: 2 No, there aren't. 3 No, there isn't. 4 Yes, there is. 5 Yes, there are. 6 No, there isn't.

2 WB p49 Write about your desk.

Aim: to practise writing a description

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Say statements about your table or desk. Some of them are true and some are false, e.g. There aren't any books on my desk.
- Students put up their right hands for false sentences and their left hands for true sentences.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with the new language

 Students write sentences in their notebooks about their basket in SB Activity 3, using the text from WB Activity 2 as a model.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: bad, sweet (adj), good, so have I, nice, well done, everybody

Recycled language: language from the story. food, worm

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story.

Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask, e.g. What's on the tracks? Who stops the train? How does she stop the train?

S8 pp50-51 Bod apples

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit what the friends have got in frame 1 (apples).
- Pre-teach bad and sweet.
- Play the recording. Students listen for what the man in the market has got (a box of bad apples and a box of good apples) and why it is a problem (he is tricking his customers).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of the things.)

1 WB p50 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD2 Track 27

- 1 Whisper: What can we do?
- 2 Fruit seller: Apples. Nice, sweet apples.
- 3 Thunder: A box of good apples and a box of bad apples.

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 2nd picture, 3 1st picture



WB p50 Look at the story. Find the four worms hidden.

Aim: to check understanding of the story Key: 2 4, 3 7, 4 8



Think! WB p50 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 We know what we can do. 3 Well done!

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of six.
- Students each take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to review ideas and concepts from the story

 Students draw a picture of a market stall and label the fruit and vegetables.



- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to identify the consonant sound w as in we and what
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: language from the story. food

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to say the letter sound w, spelt wh.

Note: Who /hu:/ is a special word and must be learnt as a whole (it rhymes with blue).

Value: cheating doesn't pay

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. What has the man in the market got? What do the Super Friends do? How does the man feel?

Think! [SB p51] Look at the picture and circle the correct sentence.

Aim: to focus students on the detail in the story Thinking skill: matching

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- Students complete the activity individually and then compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 4 Come to the market with me.

SB pS1 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the letter sound w

- Write wall and what on the board, using a red pen for the w and the wh. Explain that both spellings give exactly the same sound.
- Students repeat What can we do? after you.

Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 3).
 Key: Whisper

58 p51 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the letter sound w

 Play the recording. Students look at the picture, read and repeat.

CD2 Track 28

```
w - w - w
Where's the watermelon, Wally?
Where's the watermelon, Wally?
```

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values WB p51 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of cheating doesn't pay

Key: Picture 2

2 WB p51 Listen and follow. Say the number.

Aim: to practise reading and saying words with the letter sound w

CD2 Track 29

Whisper, watermelon, window, white, wall, witch, windy, wheel, water

What's the number? It's number three.

Key: See CD script above.

3 WB p51 Listen again and say.

CD2 Track 30

Whisper, watermelon, window, white, wall, witch, windy, wheel, water

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review and practise spelling words with w and wh

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Students open their Workbook to page 51. Write the words in a random order on the board. In pairs, they draw the pictures and write the words.

Key: See CD script above.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of cheating doesn't pay

- Focus on the parts of the story where the man sells them bad apples.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when cheating might not pay.
- Make sure students do not accuse others in the class of cheating.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

- to practise reading, speaking and writing skills
 Skills:
- reading for specific information
- interactive speaking
- writing from a model

New language: needed, bowl, recipe, cup, sugar, flour, spoon, butter, start, mix, mixture, cake tin, bake, oven, fruit juice, pineapples, cola, party

Recycled language: food

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Your students will be able to act out a play. Your students will be able to write a play from a model.

Warm-up

Aim: to review food

- Write Food in a circle on the board and brainstorm all the food students know.
- Leave the word map on the board and add to it during the lesson.

Think! [58 p52] What's needed for the cake? Read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning)

Thinking skill: matching visual and written information

- Tell students that this is a recipe.
- Elicit what they can see in the photos.
- Tell students to read the text quickly and silently to find out if these things are in the recipe.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class.
- Read the recipe together and check understanding of all new vocabulary.
- Add the new food words to the word map.

Key: milk, sugar, flour, butter, eggs, bananas

SB p52 Act out the play.

Aim: to practise reading for detail and interactive speaking

- Invite two students to read the play aloud.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary and add new food words to the word map (pineapples, cola).

- Invite two more students to read the play aloud, this time acting it out.
- Students practise the role play in pairs.

SB p52 Write your own play and act it out.

Aim: to practise writing a conversation

- Demonstrate the activity using the model.
- Write the play on the board and underline the words students can change, e.g. food items. No.
- In pairs, students write their own plays based on the model.
- Monitor and help with ideas or language as necessary.
- Students practise and rehearse their role plays.
- Students take turns to do their role plays for the class.

1 WB p52 Listen and tick (/) what they like.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information

CD2 Track 31

Hi, I'm Sandra. I live in London. In our family, we often eat chicken for dinner. We all like chicken, Mum also cooks potatoes, carrots and tomatoes. My mum and my brother John like potatoes, carrots and tomatoes. My dad likes potatoes and carrots. He doesn't like tomatoes. I like potatoes and tomatoes. I don't like carrots. To drink, my dad and I like juice. John doesn't like juice – he drinks water. My mum also likes to drink water with her dinner.

Key: Sandra likes potatoes, tomatoes, juice. John likes potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, water. Mum likes potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, water. Dad likes potatoes, carrots, juice.

2 WB p52 Write about your family.

Aim: to practise writing from a model

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review language from the lesson

Students copy the food word map into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with information transfer skills

- Students work in groups of four.
- They draw a table like the one in WB Activity 1. They write their names at the top.
- Down the side they write all the foods they mentioned in their texts for WB Activity 2.
- They put ticks and crosses to show which foods each of them likes and does not like.

T52

to practise listening skills

Skills:

Listening for specific information

New language: beans (different meaning from first lesson)

Recycled language: food

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review language to talk about food

 Ask for volunteers to role play some of their plays from the previous lesson.

158 p53 Listen and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise listening skills 👚

- Tell students to study the pictures in the Student's Book and read the questions before they listen.
- Elicit who the people in the pictures are (Daniel, sister Emma, Mum, Dad).
- Play the recording straight through to the end.

CD2 Track 32

Hi, I'm Daniel, I'm from New York, On Sundays my sister Emma and I make breakfast. I have milk. My sister, my mum and my dad have orange juice. My dad and I have sausages and eggs. My mum and my sister have eggs and beans. My mum, my sister and I also have apples or mangos. My father doesn't. He doesn't like fruit. He has some cheese.

- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1 c. 2 b. 3 b. 4 c

WB p53 Look and read. Put a tick (/) or a cross (x) in the box.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail Key: 3 /, 4 X, 5 /, 6 X, 7 /

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review vocabulary and spelling

- Spell out some of the words from this and the previous lesson, e.g. B O W L.
- Students guess the word as quickly as they can.
- The student who guesses correctly spells out another word for the class to guess.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise speaking skills

- Brainstorm what the family in SB Activity 1 have for breakfast. Write the words on the board.
- Individually, students write a short list of what they have for breakfast.
- Make groups of three. Students draw Venn diagrams on paper to show which foods they have for breakfast are the same and which are different.
- Display the diagrams on the walls. Students report back to the class about their groups.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Science

New language: bacteria, ill, meat, dry, kitchen, hands, clean

Recycled language: food, dangerous, careful, hot, cold, fridge

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Science in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to review hygiene procedures

- Mime washing your hands. Elicit/teach Wash your hands.
- Ask students why we wash our hands and when we wash our hands.
- Pre-teach clean, dirty, ill.

158 p54 Listen, read and number the photos.

Aim: to introduce the topic of food hygiene

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book. Elicit what they think they are.
- Read the first sentence to the class and elicit that the pictures are of different bacteria.
- Play the recording for students to hear their names.
- Ask students if they have heard of these bacteria before.

Key: 3. 4. 1. 2

(12 15B p54 Listen, read and draw lines.

Aim: to practise listening and matching skills

- Give students time to look at the pictures before they read and listen.
- Pre-teach meat and kitchen.
- Play the recording. Students read the text silently as they listen.
- They draw lines and compare their answers in pairs.
- Students read the texts again to make sure of their answers.
- Check with the class.
- Discuss the six pieces of advice with the class.

Key: 1 d. 2 e. 3 a. 4 b. 5 f. 6 c

1) Think! | WB p54 Match the bacteria.

Aim: to review vocabulary Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 d. 3 c. 4 b

2) W8 p54 Find and circle the bacteria.

Aim: to encourage students to pay close attention to visual detail

Note: Remind students that we cannot really see these bacteria. That is why they are dangerous. Also tell students that not all bacteria are dangerous. Some bacteria are important for our badies and are not dangerous to eat.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today.
 e.g. bacteria and how to prepare food.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to encourage students to use their knowledge and experience

- Re-read with students the six pieces of advice about hygiene from SB Activity 2.
- Make groups of four. Students think of at least two more pieces of advice to add to the list. Remind students to use the imperative.
- Go around the groups and help with / supply any vocabulary they need.
- Elicit the new advice from each group and write it on the board.
- Discuss with the class if they think it is all good advice.

Alms:

- to extend the focus on Science through English
- to enable students to complete a project
- **Recycled language:** food

Materials: lemons, a knife, earth, clear plastic bags, bowls, water, tissues

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Science in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review food hygiene

 Brainstorm with students the pieces of advice about food hygiene from the previous lesson. Students can add their own ideas if they did the Extension activity.

Project | S8 p55 Grow some bacteria.

Aim: to enable students to express their creativity

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Make pairs or small groups. Supply each pair/group with the materials they need.
- Monitor and help each group as necessary.
- Discuss the outcomes as a class.

WB p55 Draw lines to make sentences.

Aim: to give students practice with collocations

Key: 2 Cook meat until it's very hot. 3 Keep food in the fridge. 4 Wash fruit and vegetables.



WB p55 Circle the things that are wrong. Then draw lines from your circles to the sentences.

Aim: to review students' understanding of food hygiene

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today. e.g. what's dangerous in the kitchen and how to prepare food properly and I've grown some bacteria.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project, e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project and what the outcome was.
- Monitor and help as necessary.

 to draw out the students' creativity through mental imagery

New language: smell, fruit salad

Recycled language: food, adjectives, imperatives

Materials: CD, scissors, clean potatoes, wool, toothpicks, glue, paper, coloured pens, a potato person you have made yourself

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to ideas and respond creatively.

Your students will be able to follow written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review food words

- Say, e.g. Mmm. I like eggs. but I don't like chicken.
- Invite students to say in turn foods they like and don't like.
- Pre-teach fruit salad and smell.

158 p56 Listen and imagine. Then draw your picture.

Aim: to enable students to listen, visualise and create their own pictures

- Tell students to put their heads on their desks, close their eyes and listen.
- Play the recording. At the end of the recording, speak quietly and tell students to listen again and imagine. Tell them they are going to draw the picture from their heads.

CD2 Track 35

Let's make a big fruit salad for you and your friends. Would you like some bananas and apples? Would you like some red grapes? What a wonderful smell! Now ask your mum to cut the fruit. Watch her. Smell the fruit. And now get a plate and a spoon. Mmm. a wonderful fruit salad!

- Play the recording again.
- Students draw their own pictures of what they imagined.
- Go around the class and encourage students.
- Talk to them about their ideas and help if necessary.

SB p56 Write about your picture. Then listen to your friends and guess.

Aim: to give students practice in describing a picture

- Read the example from the Student's Book with the class.
- Students can use adjectives and other words to make their descriptions more interesting.
- They write their descriptions. Monitor and help as necessary.

- Put students into groups of three or four.
- Stick students' pictures up on a wall / the board.
- Each student reads out their written piece for the class to guess which picture is theirs.

Note: Students should not write their names on their pictures.

WB p56 Make a potato person.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of instructions to make a potato person

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to compare their pictures

- Display students' pictures from SB Activity 1 on tables or on the walls.
- Have students go around and see how many different foods they can find.
- Ask the students if any pictures have exactly the same foods.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to exploit their potato people

- Show the class your potato person and tell the class about him/her, e.g. This is George. He's got two brothers and a sister. His favourite food is cheese. He doesn't like potatoes!
- Give students time to think about their descriptions.
- Then students go around the classroom introducing their potato people to each other.

т56



- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (food), small pieces of paper for the game, eight counters for each student

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to play a game.

Warm-up

Aim: to review food

- Use the flashcards to review food.
- Show each flashcard quickly to the class. Students say the food and if they like it.
- Brainstorm other food from the unit that students remember.

1 SB p57 The food game

Aim: to enable students to review language from the unit by playing a game

- Elicit some of the things students can see on the gameboard on the Student's Book page.
- Tell students to cut out eight small pieces of paper, each the size of a square in the gameboard.
- Students play the game in pairs. They each cover eight food items with a small square of paper. They do not look at each other's books.
- · Hand out the counters, eight for each student.
- They take turns to ask and answer, using Are/Is there any ... ? about the food on the gameboard. If their partner's food is not covered, he/she answers Yes, there are/is and hands a counter to the student. If the food is covered, the answer is No, there isn't/aren't. The first student to get all their partner's counters is the winner.
- Repeat the game in new pairs with students covering different items.

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for food

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for food (WB page 123).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures, using words from the word bank.

(

I WB p57 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 57.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise furniture
- to say a chant with the class

New language: lamp, mirror, armchair, wardrobe, sofa, bed, table, mat, mess, tidy up, clock

Recycled language: clothes, colours, schoolbag Materials: CD, flashcards (furniture)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name some furniture.

Warm-up

Aim: to review objects

- Play a game of 'I spy'. Say I spy with my little eye something beginning with S.
- Students look around the classroom and guess words which begin with S.
- Choose things such as schoolbag, desk and chair to prepare students for the topic of this unit.
- Students can take turns to choose objects in the room for others to guess.

Presentation

Aim: to present furniture

- Use the flashcards to present each object.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and elicit the words at random.

158 p58 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise furniture

- Students look at the picture of the bedroom in the Student's Book. Elicit/teach bedroom.
- Ask students if their bedrooms look like this.
- Play the recording.

CD2 Track 36

Mum: What a mess. Flash!
Flash: Yeah. I know. Rd like to go to the park now.
Mum: No way. Tidy up. Then you can go.
Flash: Mum. please.
Mum: No. Sorry, Flash. You can go to the park when your room is tidy.
Flash: OK. Thanks, Mum.
Now say the words.
1 Jamp. 2 mirror. 3 armchair. 4 wardrobe. 5 sofa. 6 bed. 7 table.

- Students point to the objects when they hear the words
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the new words.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

258 p58 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the new words

- Use the picture to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach mess and tidy up.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the others click their fingers in time with the rhythm.
- Change groups and repeat.

W8 p58 Use the code to colour the picture.

Aim: to practise motor skills

2 W8 p58 Look at Activity 1. Write the words.

Aim: to practise spelling of new vocabulary

Key: 2 sofa. 3 table. 4 wardrobe. 5 mirror. 6 bed. 7 mat, 8 lamp

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Flash each flashcard quickly in front of the class.
- Students say what it is.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise memorisation and speaking

- Say, e.g. In my bedroom I've got a green sofa.
 Student A chooses another object and says: In my bedroom I've got a green sofa and a blue and white lamp.
- Continue the list, choosing students at random, until there are about eight items.
- Start another list.



8 mat
to present and practise this, that, these, those

Recycled language: furniture, colours, like

Materials: CD, flashcards (furniture)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify objects using this and that.

Warm-up

Aim: to review objects in a room

- Write the first two letters of each object on the board, with dashes to show how many other letters there are in the word, e.g. la___.
- With books closed, students write the words in their notebooks and compare their spellings in pairs.
- Place the flashcards on the board.
- Students come up in turn and write the word under the flashcard.

Presentation

Aim: to present this, these, that, those

- Place books or other objects in different parts of the classroom.
- Use the objects to teach this, these, that and those.

1 38 p59 Listen and match.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the sentences and at the pictures.
- Check students know what to do.
- Play the recording. They listen and match.

CD2 Track 38

Mum: I like this blue lamp. Daughter: I don't like it. I like that green lamp over there, Son: Do you like these yellow chairs?

Dad: Yes, I do. And those blue chairs are nice too.

- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and then check answers with the class.

Key: a 3, b 1, c 4, d 2

Cip SB p59 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first pair of sentences on the recording.
- Students repeat.
- Do the same for the second pair.
- Students practise saying the sentences in pairs.

3 58 p59 Talk about your classroom.

Aim: to give students practice in using this. that. these. those

- Demonstrate the activity by talking about some of the objects in the classroom.
- Check students know what to do.
- Students take turns to make statements using like / don't like about objects. Make sure they do not talk about other students in this way.
- Check using open pairs.

1 WB p59 Look and draw lines.

Aim: to practise the new language

Key: 2 c. 3 a. 4 b

2 WB p59 Write the words.

Aim: to practise writing the new language Key: 2 that, 3 This, 4 these

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Point to objects around the class, single ones or groups of objects, near you and far away.
- Students call out this, these, that or those as appropriate.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Students draw a simple picture of their classroom or their bedroom. It has objects in it, but only one person: the student himself/herself. This is important so there is a sense of perspective for this/that.
- Students then write sentences about the room, using SB Activity 3 as a model.



- to consolidate this, that, these, those and objects in a room
- to sing a song with the class

New language: real pain, awful, swear, stop it

Recycled language: furniture, Mum, shop, beautiful

Materials: CD, flashcards (furniture). poster paper for each group of four (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to write their own verse for a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review spelling of words for objects in a room

- Hold up each flashcard in turn. Don't say the word.
- Students write the words in their notebooks.
- They compare their answers and spellings in pairs.
- Check with the class.

SB p60 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book. Elicit which objects they can see.
- Use the pictures to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary. Tell students that some words are not appropriate for them to use, e.g. real pain.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in four groups.

SB p60 Choose words and read out your verse.

Aim: to practise writing from a model

- Check students know what to do.
- Make groups of four. Students write a new verse, using other objects in a room.
- Monitor and help as appropriate.
- Groups take turns to read out their new verse.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing their new verses as appropriate.

1W8 p60 Look and circle the things in the song. Then write how many things there are in the picture.

Aim: to practise reading skills

Key: 2 4. 3 6

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review vocabulary

- Elicit from students which objects they have got in their bedrooms.
- First they exchange information in pairs and then they share it as a class.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise creativity and promote collaboration

 In their groups of four from SB Activity 2, students draw a large picture to illustrate their new verse. They label the furniture as appropriate and write their new verse on the poster paper.

- to present and practise Whose ... ? and possessive 's
- to practise speaking skills

New language: mine

Recycled language: furniture, clothes

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer about possession using Whose and possessive 's.

Warm-up

Aim: to review clothes

- Use clothes the students are wearing to review known clothes.
- Draw pictures of clothes which are not in the room, e.g. cap.

Presentation

Aim: to present Whose and possessive 's

- Pick up a bag or a book and ask Whose is this?
- Students reply with a name. Supply the possessive 's and have students repeat.
- Practise this several times, reviewing that, these, those at the same time.
- Students then practise in open pairs, asking and answering about things in the room.

15B p61 Listen, read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise Whose ... ? and possessive 's

- Give students time to look at the pictures in the Student's Book and identify the objects.
- Play the recording for students to listen and tick.

CD2 Track 42

- Man: Hi. Rosie. Whose jeans are these? Are they Nick's? Rosie: No. they're mine.
- 2 Man: Mike, whose cap is this? Mike: It's Bob's. He's got a red cap.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.
- Focus students on the spelling of words with the possessive 's and on how to spell Whose.

Key: 1 Rosie's, 2 Bob's

2 5B p61 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.

 Students take turns to practise the questions and answers in pairs. Students can extend the questions and answers to cover other items on their desks or in the room. Teach mine if necessary.

SB p61 Look at the pictures. Then ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity for the class. Make sure they realise what the two people are called (May and Fred).
- In pairs, students take turns to ask and answer about the objects in the border, painting to the objects as necessary, e.g. Whose bed is this? It's Fred's.
- Monitor and check as pairs are working.



Think! WB p61 Match the questions with the answers.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language Thinking skill: matching

Key: 4. 3, (1), 2

2 WB p61 Answer the questions.

Aim: to practise using the possessive 's Key: 2 They're Pete's. 3 It's Dave's.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

 Repeat the same activity as in the Presentation, but students have to say a complete sentence in response, e.g. They're mine. It's (name)'s.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with the new language

- Make groups of six. Students sit in a circle around a desk.
- Students all put the same object, e.g. a pencil case, on the desk.
- One student closes his/her eyes and takes a pencil case.
- He/she asks Whose pencil case is this?
- The student to his/her right answers, e.g. It's mine / It's (name)'s.
- The student places the pencil case back on the desk.
- The game continues around the circle until all students have had a turn.
- Students repeat with another object or objects.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: just a minute, let me check. I don't believe it, sorry, messy

Recycled language: language from the story, furniture, tidy up

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story. Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask. e.g. What's the problem with the apples? Where do they go to buy more apples? Are all the apples bad? Does the man say sorry?

58 pp62-63 Tidy up!

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit what Flash's bedroom looks like in frame 2 (a mess).
- Pre-teach messy.
- Play the recording. Students listen for where Flash wants to go (the park) and what her mum finds in the wardrobe (all her things).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of their ideas.)

1 W8 p62 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD2 Track 45

- 1 Whisper: Can Flash come to the park?
- 2 Flash: Can I go to the park now?
- 3 Flash's mum: I don't believe it!

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 1st picture, 3 1st picture



Aim: to check understanding of the story

Key: 2 an idea, 3 check, 4 tidy



Think! WB p62 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 Finished! 3 I don't believe it!

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into pairs.
- Students take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role. (They can omit the first half-frame.)
- Students practise the role play in their pairs.
- Volunteer pairs role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to encourage attention to detail in pictures

- Students look at the picture story for 30 seconds and then close their Student's Books.
- They list as many things as they can remember which are on the floor in frame 2.
- They compare their lists in pairs and then in groups of four.
- They look and check.



- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise two main pronunciations of the letter sound oo: /u:/ as in moon and /u/ as in look
- to review language from the story and the unit
- Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: language from the story, furniture

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to identify and say the short and long oo vowel sounds and recognise some words which contain them.

Note: The words door and floor are pronounced with the or letter sound (rhyming with for).

Value: tidiness

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. What is Flash's room like? Is it tidy? Where does she want to go? What does she do?

Imagine you are Whisper and Flash. Act out the phone call at the end of the story.

Aim: to focus students on the content and implications of the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Elicit ideas from students for the phone conversation between Flash and Whisper.
- Do a dialogue build on the board, taking ideas from the class.
- Use this outline as a guide:

Whisper: H. Flash. It's Whisper again. Can you come to the park now? Flash: Hi, Whisper: Sorry, there's a problem. Whisper: What?

Flash: I'm tidying up my room.

Whisper: We can help you. Flash: Great!

MANIL (2000)

Students practise the phone conversation in pairs.

58 p63 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the two letter sounds for oo

 Write book and pool on the board, using a red pen for the oa.

- Explain that book has a short /u/ sound and pool has a long /u:/ sound. Separate out the phonemes in book (b - oo - k).
- · Students repeat Bag, books, balls and dolls after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 4).
 Keu: Flash

SB p63 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the short and long sounds of oo

CD2 Track 46

oo - oo - oo Look at the books all over the room. Look at the books all over the room!



Values | WB p63 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of tidiness

Key: Picture 2

WB p63 Say and write the words under look or school.

Aim: to practise reading and saying words with oo sounds

CD2 Track 47

oo - oo - oo Look, book, good, football oo - oo - oo School, food, zoo, pool

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review and to learn some special words with the oo sounds

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Teach some special words with the long oo sound: do, to and you.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of tidiness

- Focus on what happens to Flash because her room is so messy (she cannot go to the park).
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students being messy has meant they cannot do something.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

to practise reading skills

Skills:

reading for specific information

Recycled language: furniture, colours, prepositions

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review objects in a room

- Write the words for objects in a room in scrambled letter order on the board.
- Students come to the board in turn and write the words correctly.

58 p64 Read and write the correct words next to numbers 1–8.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning) and identification skills (11)

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book. Elicit one or two things they can see.
- Read the instruction and check students know what to do.
- Students complete the activity individually.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class.
- Read the text around the class.
- Key: 1 bed, 2 wardrobe, 3 table, 4 clock, 5 chairs, 6 mirror, 7 bookcase, 8 books

1 W8 p64 Listen and draw lines.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information 🕅

CD2 Track 48

T64

- Woman: Put the cat on the sofa.
 Boy: Sorry?
 Woman: Put the cat on the sofa.
 Boy: CK.
- 2 Woman: Now put the mirror on the wall, between the pictures. Boy: On the wall, between the pictures, Woman: That's right, Boy: OK.
- Woman: Next, can you put the book under the table?
 Boy: Under the table.
 Woman: That's right. Put the book under the table.
 Boy: Done it.
- 4 Woman: Now find the lamp. Boy: The lamp. OK. Woman: And put the lamp on the table. Boy: On the table. OK.

5 Woman: And finally, put the mat on the floor, in front of the TV.

Boy Good, I've finished.

Key: The mirror – on the wall between the pictures. The book – under the table. The lamp – on the table. The mat – on the floor in front of the TV. The dog – no line.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review prepositions

 Give instructions to the class as you would at the end of the lesson, e.g. Close your book and put it in your bag. Make it a game. When you say Simon says before each instruction, they do it. When you do not, they do not.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

- Students use the text from SB Activity 1 to write about their own bedrooms.
- Monitor students as they are writing and prompt them to use adjectives for description.
- When you have checked their first drafts, students write a final draft in their notebooks.
- If time, they can draw a picture to illustrate the text.



 to practise listening, speaking and writing skills Skills:

- listening for specific information
- productive speaking

New language: balloon

Recycled language: furniture, think, draw, close, sit, pen, paper

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to speak to other students about what they do.

Warm-up

Aim: to activate students' ideas

- Write the word bedroom on the board.
- Elicit from students what they like to do in their bedrooms, e.g. read, sleep, listen to music, watch TV.
- Build a word map on the board around bedroom.

SB p65 Listen and answer.

Aim: to practise listening skills

- Tell students that this is a picture of Claire in her bedroom.
- Play the recording. They listen to find out if any of their ideas in the Warm-up are what Claire does in her bedroom.

CD2 Track 49

When I want to think. I go to my room. I close the door, I take pen and paper. 1 st on my bed. I start drawing little pictures: Flowers, cars. balloons. dogs, cats and elephants. I draw and think. I don't look at my pictures. I just think and think.

- Check with the class.
- Students read the questions before they listen again.
- Play the recording straight through to the end again.
- Students compare their answers to guestions 1–3 in pairs.
- Check with the class, playing the recording again if necessary.

Key: 1 Claire goes to her (bed)room. 2 She sits on her bed. 3 She draws little pictures. 4 and 5 Students' own answers.



58 p65 What do you do when you want to think? Tell your friend.

Aim: to practise speaking skills

- Put students into pairs.
- They take turns to discuss their answers to questions 4 and 5 from Activity 1.
- Share ideas as a class.

WB p65 Talk about your bedroom.

Aim: to give students practice in productive speaking

WB p65 Read and circle.

Aim: to practise reading for detail

Keu: 2 these, 3 are, 4 bedrooms, 5 beds

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the content of the lesson

- Elicit from students who would like to stay in the ice hotel.
- Ask them to think about what they could do there. e.g. Can they watch TV? Can they do all the things from the Warm-up?

Extension activity

Aim: to practise writing skills

- Play the recording from SB Activity 1 again.
- Students write a short text of their ideas from SB Activity 2.
- Encourage them to use their imaginations and make the text expressive like Claire's.
- Students write their texts on paper.
- Display the texts around the room.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Science

New language: recycling, throw away, rubbish, landfill, hole, ground, newspapers, magazines, bottles, jars, glass, metal, earth

Recycled language: furniture, can, garden, paper, fridge

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Science in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of rubbish

- Point to the rubbish bin in the classroom and elicit what it is and what goes in there.
- Introduce the concept of recycling by asking students if there are some things they can use again.
- If you have recycling bins for paper, glass, cans, etc. in the school, talk about these with the class.
- Pre-teach recycling.



Think! 58 p66 Listen, read and talk about the question.

Aim: to extend students' understanding of recycling Thinking skills: reflection and analysis

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Play the recording. Students listen and read.
- Check understanding of new words in the text and understanding of the text as a whole.
- Play the recording again.
- Discuss the question as a class and write students' ideas on the board.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

SB p66 Listen and read about recycling. Number the pictures.

Aim: to practise listening and matching skills

- Give students time to look at the pictures before they read and listen.
- Pre-teach bottles, jars, glass, metal and earth.
- Play the recording. Students read the text silently as they listen.
- They number the pictures and compare their answers in pairs.
- Students read the texts again to make sure of their onswers.

- Check with the class.
- Discuss which of the four things students and their families regularly do.

Key: 4, 3, 2, 1

WB p66 Look at the rubbish. Read and answer.

Aim: to review vocabulary

Keu: 2 No, there isn't. 3 Yes, there are. 4 Yes, there is. 5 Yes, there are. 6 No, there aren't.



Think! WB p66 Look and draw lines.

Aim: to activate and extend students' understanding of recycling

Thinking skill: matching

Key: old bottles - new glass, old fridge - new metal. apple core – compost

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today. e.g recycling and what rubbish can become when it's recycled.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to encourage students to reflect on their knowledge and experience

- Brainstorm with the class all the things they threw away yesterday (rather than recycled).
- Focus on the words on the board. Discuss with students which things can be recycled and how.
- Tell them to look back at the list in SB Activity 2 for ideas.



- to extend the focus on Science through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: card

Recycled language: recycling

Materials: Unit 5 stickers, cardboard boxes, paper, newspapers, magazines, scissors, glue, coloured pens

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Science in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review recycling

- Brainstorm with students what they learnt about recycling in the previous lesson.
- Write words on the board, e.g. jars, magazines, vegetables, bikes, and elicit how they can be recycled, e.g. Jars become glass.
- Ask students if they have recycled more things since the previous lesson.

\$8 p67 Look, read and stick the rubbish in the correct bins.

Aim: to review and extend what students have learnt about recycling

- Focus students on the pictures in the Student's Book and elicit one thing they can put in each bin.
- Students prepare their stickers.

Note: In order to carry out this activity, students will first need to cut out their stickers with the backs attached.

- In pairs, students discuss and decide what to put in which bin.
- Discuss and share ideas as a class.
- Students stick the stickers in the correct bins.

Key: Fruit and vegetables: pear core, banana skin. Glass: glass bottle, empty glass jar. Paper and card: cardboard box, newspaper. Metal: tin can, tin foil.

> Think 58 p67 Think of more things to put in these bins.

Aim: to build on students' knowledge and experience Thinking skill: analysis

- Elicit from the class one idea for each bin.
- Put students into groups of four. In their fours, they think of as many things as they can.
- Go around the groups, supplying the English words. as needed.
- Share ideas as a class.



Project | SB p67 Make some recycling bins for vour classroom.

Aim: to enable students to follow instructions and collaborate

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Make four groups. Each group makes one of the bins as in Activity 1. They decorate and label the bins.
- Supply each group with the materials they need.
- Monitor and help each group as necessary.

Note: If you use the bins in the classroom, you will need to contact your local recycling company to come and collect the rubbish you generate.

WB p67 Draw the rubbish in the recycling bins.

Aim: to give students practice with classifying

Key: food: apple core; metal: fork (this may need pre-teaching), drinks can; glass; bottle, broken glass; paper: birthday card, magazine



2 Think! WB p67 Write a list.

Aim: to encourage students to reflect on their actions Thinking skill: reflection

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today. e.g. four categories of recycling and made a recycling bin for the classroom.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activitu

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project, e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually, students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project and what the outcome was.
- Monitor and help as necessary.

 to stimulate the students' imagination through listening and acting out

New language: nothing

Recycled language: furniture, imperatives

Materials: CD, card, clean rubbish, glue

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen and do actions to demonstrate meaning.

Your students will be able to follow auditory, written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review instructions

- Give a student some simple instructions to follow, e.g. Stand up. Close your eyes. Touch your head with your left hand. Turn around. Open your eyes. Sit down.
- Repeat, giving similar instructions to other students.

Then listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions and in sequencing information

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording and mime the actions.

CD2 Track 52

- Look out of the window.
- 2 It's cold outside.
- 3 Where's your hat?
- 4 Look under your bed.
- 5 Look in the wardrobe.
- 6 Nothing!
- 7 The cat has got it.
- 8 Oh no!
- Mime the actions without the recording and checking understanding through mime.
- Play the recording again and mime the actions. Students mime the actions with you.
- Students listen again and sequence the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 6, 8, 7, 2, 3, 1, 4, 5

SB p68 Read and number the sentences from the story.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail

- Read the eight instructions aloud.
- Students individually match the instructions with the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check by asking one student to read an instruction aloud, another to mime the action and another to say the number.

Key: 5, 4, 8, 7, 3, 2, 1, 6

SB p68 Listen to your friend and act out.

Aim: to give students practice in giving and following instructions

- Demonstrate the activity by giving the instructions in random order for the class to follow.
- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Invite more confident students to role play their instructions in front of the class.

WB p68 Make a picture from rubbish.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of visual and written instructions to make a picture from rubbish

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

 Play a game of 'Simon says', using the instructions from SB Activity 2. When you say Simon says before the instruction, students mime it. When you do not say Simon says, students do not mime it.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to compare and discuss their pictures and what they used to make them

- Put students into groups of four.
- They take turns to describe their pictures and what they used to make them.

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (furniture)

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to complete a quiz.

Warm-up

Aim: to review objects in a room

- Use the flashcards to review vocabulary.
- Show each flashcard quickly to the class. Students say if they have the object in their bedroom and, if they have, what colour it is.

D SB p69 Quiz time

Aim: to enable students to review language from the unit by completing a quiz

- Students do the quiz in pairs. The first time they do it without looking back through the unit.
- Pairs check their work with other pairs.
- Students then look back to check questions they did not know.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 1 a, 2 b, 3 c, 4 c, 5 c, 6 a, 7 b, 8 a

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for furniture

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for furniture (WB page 124).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures, using words from the word bank.



I WB p69 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 69.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise face words
- to say a chant with the class

New language: people, eyes, hair, ears, glasses, nose, cheeks, mouth, chin, face, so (colour), I do. Do you know his/her name?

Recycled language: colours, his, her, they

Materials: CD. flashcards (the face)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name parts of and things on a face.

Warm-up

Aim: to review colours

- Play a game of 'I spy'. Say I spy with my little eye something which is pink and green.
- Students look around the classroom and look for things which are pink and green.
- Students guess by saying the person and the thing. e.q. (Name)'s shoes.
- Students can take turns to choose objects in the room for others to guess.

Presentation

Aim: to present face words

- Use the flashcards to present each object, pointing to the part of your face at the same time.
- Say the word for students to repeat. They point to the relevant part of their face.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board and elicit the words at random.

SB p70 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise face words

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Play the recording.

CD3 Track O2 Misty, Flash, Whisper: Happy birthday, Thunder! Everybody: Hurray! Thunder: Come on, Let's plau! Now say the words. 1 eyes. 2 hair. 3 ears. 4 glasses. 5 nose, 6 cheeks. 7 mouth. 8 chin. 9 face

Students point to the face words when they hear them.

- Play the recording again. Students repeat the new words
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

SB p70 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the new words

- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach so (colour).
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant. in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- One group chants and the other claps in time with the rhythm.
- Swap groups and repeat.

WB p70 Use the letters to make face words.

Aim: to practise spelling the face words

Key: Down: glasses, chin, face; Across: cheeks, hair, mouth, nose, ears



WB p70 Write the words.

Aim: to give further practice spelling the new vocabulary

Key: 2 ears. 3 eyes. 4 hair. 5 nose. 6 mouth. 7 chin. 8 cheek(s), 9 glasses

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Point to parts of your face and elicit the new words.
- Use the glasses flashcard if you don't wear glasses.

Extension activity

Aim: to support memory strategies

 In their notebooks, students each draw a face and label it with the new words.



- to present and practise adjectives of emotion
- to present and practise short answers: Yes, I am, No, I'm not.

New language: sad, excited, scared, tired, angry, happy

Recycled language: the face, colours, have got, present continuous, to be

Materials: CD, flashcards (the face)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name different emotions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

- Write the first two letters of each face word on the board, with dashes to show how many other letters there are in the word, e.g. gl_____.
- With books closed, students write the words and compare their spellings in pairs.
- Place the flashcards on the board.
- Students come up in turn and write the word under the flashcard.

Presentation

Aim: to present adjectives of emotion

- Use simple pictures on the board and your own mime to present the feelings.
- Draw the face, mime the emotion, say, e.g. I'm happy and write happy under the happy face on the board.
- Repeat for the other feelings.
- Point to each face for students to repeat and mime.

SB p71 Read and write the names.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the sentences and at the pictures in the Student's Book.
- Do the first one as an example with the class.
- Check students know what to do.
- They read silently and match, and then compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class. Students mime the emotion for each one.

Key: a Dan, b Jim, c Sally, d Tom, e Sue, f Paula

2 SB p71 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first question and set of answers on the recording.
- Students repeat.

- Do the same for the second pair.
- Students practise asking and answering the questions in pairs.

SB p71 Play the mime game.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Pre-teach Yes, I am and No. I'm not.
- Demonstrate the activity by miming one of the emotions and having students guess using yes/no questions.
- Check students know what to do.
- Students play the game in pairs.
- Check using open pairs.

WB p71 Find the words.

Aim: to practise spelling of the new language

Key: 2 excited, 3 scared, 4 tired, 5 angry, 6 happy

WB p71 Read and circle.

Aim: to check students' comprehension of the new language

Key: 2 scared, 3 tired, 4 happy, 5 sad, 6 angry

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Mime an emotion, e.g. sad, and say I'm tired. Students stand up because it is false.
- · Repeat.
- Students sit or stay sitting for true sentences and stand or stay standing for false ones.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Students work in pairs. They think of a little mime story which ends with one of the pair saying I'm (emotion).
- Monitor and give ideas as they prepare their mimes.
- Pairs mime their stories for the class.

to sing a song with the class

New language: guitar, sing, star, grandpa, world, so many songs, man, woman, rocking chair, grandma, great, although

Recycled language: family members, that

Materials: CD, flashcards (the face)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to write about a member of their family.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

- Hold up each flashcard in turn. Don't say the word.
- Students write the words in their notebooks.
- They compare their answers and spellings in pairs.
- · Check with the class.

18 p72 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Elicit/pre-teach grandma, grandpa, guitar and rocking chair.
- Use the picture to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in four groups.

Draw a picture of someone in your family and write about them.

Aim: to practise writing from a model

- Check students know what to do.
- Go around the class to elicit who each student is going to draw and what the person is like. Supply vocabulary as needed.
- Students draw their pictures and write a first draft.
- Go around the class and check students' writing, giving feedback as appropriate.
- Students write a final draft of their texts next to their pictures.

WB p72 Read and tick (/).

Aim: to practise listening and reading skills

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 4th picture

2 WB p72 Write a verse about someone you know.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

Ending the lesson

Aim: to sing a song

- Put students into pairs. They prepare their new songs from the work they did in WB Activity 2.
- Use the karaoke version of the song as pairs perform their new verses.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise reading skills

- Students display their pictures and texts from SB Activity 2 around the room.
- In pairs, students go around the room, reading the information.
- Each pair counts how many different family members are mentioned.
- As a class, they vote for their favourite drawing and text.



- to present possessive adjectives their, our
- to present and practise the months of the year
- to practise speaking skills

New language: months of the year, birthday, in (April), their, our

Recycled language: possessive 's, possessive adjectives

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to say when their and their friends' birthdays are.

Warm-up

Aim: to review possessive adjectives: my. his, her. your

- Use classroom objects to review my, his. her, your.
- Hold up your pen and say This is my pen. Point to Student A's pen and say This is your pen. Hold up the pen and prompt Student B to say This is his (or her) pen.
- Practise with other objects and other students.

(10) ISB p73 Listen and chant.

Aim: to present and practise the sequence of the months of the year

- Write the date on the board and elicit the month.
- Ask which month comes before and which after.
- Elicit as many months as students can remember.
- Play the recording. Students follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again for students to join in.
- When students have learnt the chant, practise it with the whole class.

SB p73 Listen, read and circle.

Aim: to present and practise in for months

- Pre-teach / check understanding of birthday.
- Ask several students When's your birthday? They say the month only.
- Students read the sentences before they listen.
- Play the recording. Students compare answers in pairs.

CD3 Track O8

Lucy: When's your birthday, Ben? Ben: My birthday's in May too. In twelve days.

Ben: When are their birthdays? Lucy: Their birthdays are in Julu.

Lucy: Great. Our birthdays are in May! Two parties. Sippee! Ben: Are Tim and Sam cousins? Lucy: No. they're twins. Ben: Is that your lizard? Lucy: Ves. it is. Ben: When's its birthday? Lucy: I don't know.

- Play the recording again.
- Check with the class, eliciting full sentences.
- Ask more students When's your birthday? They reply with a full sentence: My birthday is in (June).
- Students practise asking and answering in pairs.

Key: 1 May, 2 May, 3 July

SB p73 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.
- Use groups of students in the class to clarify the meaning of our and their.

S8 p73 Find out when your friends' birthdays are. Then play the birthday game.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Students ask and answer When's your birthday? around the class and get into birthday month groups. Some groups may be only one student.
- Each group then presents their birthdays in turn as a memory/chain game, e.g. Group A: Our birthdays are in May. Group B: Their birthdays are in May. My birthday's in July. Group C: Their birthdays are in May. Her birthday's in July. Our birthdays are in January.

WB p73 Number the months.

Aim: to give students practice with sequencing the months

Key: 2 February, 6 June, 3 March, 5 May, 11 November, 8 August, 12 December, 10 October

2 Thir

Think! W8 p73 Look, think and match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to practise possessive adjectives

Thinking skill: matching

Key: a 6, b 2, c 4, d 5, (e 1), f 3

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Repeat the same activity as in the Warm-up, but include groups of students as well as plural things.
- Elicit the sentence from the students each time.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with birthdays

 Make a birthday poster with the class, showing when each student's birthday is.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: pull, tug of war, three-legged race, medal, pin, tail, donkey, perfect, winner

Recycled language: language from the story

Materials: CD, a piece of string and sticky tack (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story. Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask, e.g. What's the problem with Flash's room? Where does she put her things? Does she go to the park with Whisper? (It's very messy. She puts things in her wardrobe. No. she doesn't.)

58 pp74-75 Thunder's birthday

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Elicit what day it is (Thunder's birthday). Tell students that the friends are going to play some games.
- Play the recording. Students listen for what the names of the three games are (Tug of war. Three-legged race, Pin the tail on the donkey).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Demonstrate the games and ask if students have played any of them.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of their ideas.)

WB p74 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD3 Track 11

- 1 Thunder: Let's have a three-legged race!
- 2 Whisper: No medial for us.
- 3 Thunder: Let's play pin the tail on the donkey

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 2nd picture, 3 2nd picture

WB p74 Match the names with the games.

Aim: to check understanding of the story Keu: 2 b. 3 a

Think! WB p74 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching Key: 2 Oh dear! 3 Let's play.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of six.
- Students take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activitu

Aim: to activate students' imaginations

- Play a game of 'Pin the tail on the donkey' with students.
- Draw a donkey on the board. Use a piece of string and sticky tack as the tail.
- Pre-teach to the right, to the left, up, down and You're very close to the class so they can prompt each other as they play the game.
- Play the game with the class.

- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise saying the long vowel sound ay as in play. This phoneme is called a diphthong (the mouth changes shape as it is made).
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: language from the story

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to say the letter sound *ai/ay* and identify the alternative spelling *a_e* (e.g. *lake*), called a split digraph. They can contrast this sound with the short *a*.

Note: Hair /hee/ is a special word (it rhymes with where and air).

Value: being a good loser

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. Whose birthday is it? What games do they play? Do the Super Friends win the medals? (It's Thunder's birthday. They play 'Tug of war', a three-legged race and 'Pin the tail on the donkey'. No, they don't.)

Think! 58 p75 Look at the picture and circle the correct sentence.

Aim: to focus students on the content of the story Thinking skills: interpreting and giving reasons

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- They look at the picture and choose the best sentence.
- Check with the class, eliciting why they chose that sentence.

Key: 2 We're the winners!

58 p75 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the letter sound ai/ay

- Write play and tail on the board, using a red pen for the ay and ai. explaining that the two words have the same sound.
- Students repeat Let's play Pin the tail on the donkey after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 5).

Key: Thunder

SB p75 Listen and say.

Aim: to proctise the long sound ai and recognise its alternative spellings

Play the recording. Students look, read and repeat.

CD3 Track 12

ay - ay - ay Jane and a snake make cakes on a rainy day. Jane and a snake make cakes on a rainy day!

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.
- Write cake to show the alternative spelling of the ay sound on the board under play and tail.



Values | WB p75 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of being a good loser

Key: Picture 1

WB p75 Read and colour the train.

Aim: to practise the long ai sound and contrast it with the short a sound

3 1W8 p75 Listen, say and check your picture.

CD3 Track 13 Red - train, face, day, race Blue - mat, thanks, caps, lamp

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the long *ai* letter sound and its alternative spellings

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Dictate the following words: say. name, bag, Flash, rain, lamp, face, black. Students write them under columns marked ay and a.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of being a good loser

- Focus on what happens at the birthday party and who wins and who loses.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students have been good losers.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

to practise reading and writing skills
 Skills:

reading for specific information

writing an invitation

New language: invitation, ask, bring, football, running shoes, CD, See you there / on Sunday

Recycled language: family

Materials: CD, flashcards (the face)

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Your students will be able to write an invitation.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

- Use the flashcards to review face words.
- Show each one quickly to the class and they guess the word.

Think! 58 p76 Read, think and write what's missing in each birthday invitation.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information (scanning) and identification skills

Thinking skills: analysing and applying world knowledge

- Pre-teach invitation.
- Brainstorm the information needed on an invitation (place, date, time).
- Check students know what to do.
- They read the invitations silently and find what information is missing.
- They check in pairs, re-reading silently as necessary.
- Check with the class.
- Read the invitations aloud around the class.

Key: A time. B place, C date

58 p76 Write an invitation to your party.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

- Remind students of the information they need to include: place, date, time.
- Tell students to use one of the three invitations in Activity 1 to help them as they write.
- Students write their invitation to another student in the class. Organise this so that every student receives an invitation.
- Monitor students as they are writing and prompt any corrections.

- Students write the final draft on a piece of paper, addressed to a student in the classroom.
- Students swap invitations, read and reply.



Aim: to practise listening for specific information 👚

CD3 Track 14

Boy: His Emma. Can you tell me about this photo?
 Emma: This photo of my party? Sure.
 Boy: OK. Who's this girl with the long black hair and the glasses?

Emma: That's my best friend. June.

- 2 Boy: And this boy with the big nose? Who is he? Emma: That's David. He's my brother.
- 3 Boy: Who's this? The girl with the short hair? Emma: That's Jenny, She's another good friend.
- 4 Boy: And this man with the big ears and the glasses? Emma: That's my dad.
- 5 Boy: And who is this dog with the long hair? Emma: That's my dog, Ben.

Key: 2 a. 3 b. 4 c. 5 b

Ending the lesson

Aim: to activate students' imaginations

 Build two word maps on the board with students: one word map for food to eat at a party, and one word map for games to play at a party.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students listening and speaking practice

- Students use the pictures from WB Activity 1 to say and guess.
- One student says, e.g. This person's got long hair and is wearing glasses. The other student points to the correct picture.

to practise listening and speaking skills
 Skills:

listening for specific information

interactive speaking

New language: clown

Recycled language: the face, colours

Materials: CD, flashcards (the face)

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to ask and answer to play a game.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

- Stick the nine face flashcards on the board.
- Elicit the word for each one.
- Take one away. Elicit all the words again, including the missing flashcard.
- Repeat, taking one away each time until none is left.
- Continue, putting one card back on the board each time until all the flashcards are there.

SB p77 Listen and colour.

Aim: to proctise listening skills Mile

- Pre-teach clown. Tell students that these are two clowns. Elicit their names (Jolly and Poppy).
- Check students know what to do.
- Play the recording. They listen and make a small dot in the right colour.

CD3 Track 15

Can you see Jolly? He's the big clown with the long hair and the big ears. OK. Can you colour his nose red? That's right. A big, red nose, Now his eyes, Jolly's got blue eyes, Colour them blue, Good. Now let's colour his hair, What colour? Hmm. let me think, I know. Sellow. Let's colour his hair yellow. So that's a red nose, blue eyes and yellow hair. He looks great.

Now look at Poppy. She's the small clown with the short hair. She's wearing glasses, Her hair is green. Green hair! That's strange. Now colour her nose. She's got a big orange nose, it's very funny. So that's green hair and an orange nose. Let's colour her eyes brown. Nice big, brown eyes, Good job! Well done!

- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again. Check with the class.
- Students colour the clowns.

Key: Jolly: red nase, blue eyes, yellow hair: Poppy: green hair, orange nose, brown eyes

2 58 p77 Draw a clown face and play the game.

Aim: to practise speaking and listening skills

- Students each draw a clown face, using the ones in the Student's Book as a model.
- They colour it but do not show the other students.
- Put students into groups of four to six.
- Students place their pictures face down in front of them. They move them around so they don't know which is whose. Then they turn them all over.
- Students ask questions as in the prompts to find out which picture is whose.

Think! WB p77 Read and write the words.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail. Thinking skills: analysing and interpreting

Key: 2 park, 3 bike, 4 birthday, 5 brother, 6 26, 7 four, 8 July, 9 morning

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the content of the lesson

 Elicit from students which party from WB Activity 1 they would like to go to, and why.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise writing skills

 Students write a description of the clowns they drew for SB Activity 2.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Science

New language: life cycle, chrysalis, caterpillar, soft, bigger, hard, skin, hang

Recycled language: butterfly, egg

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Science in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the topic of animal families

- Elicit the animal families students studied in Unit 2.
- Focus on insects and tell students they are going to learn more about an insect in this lesson.
- Students try to guess which insect it will be.
- Students open their Student's Books to find out / check.

SB p78 Listen, read and write the words.

Aim: to extend students' understanding of life cycles

- Pre-teach life cycle.
- Play the recording.
- Then read the four texts aloud around the class.
- Students write the words and compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.
- Elicit who has seen a chrysalis.

Key: 1 egg. 2 caterpillar, 3 chrysalis, 4 butterfly

58 p78 Read again and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise reading for detail

- Students read the statements before they look at the text again.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class, eliciting how they found the answers.
- Elicit the correct answers for 1. 2 and 3.

Key: 1 no. 2 no. 3 no. 4 yes

W8 p78 Look and match.

Aim: to review vocabulary

Key: 2 a, 3 b, 4 d

WE p78 Number the pictures.

Aim: to review students' understanding of a sequence Key (from left to right): 4. (1), 3, 2

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today.
 e.g. the life cycle of a butterfly and what each stage is called.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to encourage students to compare life cycles

- Introduce the life cycle of a frog.
- Tell students what each stage is: egg. tadpole with tail, tadpole with legs, frog.
- Students draw pictures of the different stages and label the pictures.

- to extend the focus on Science through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: move, change

Recycled language: life cycles

Materials: cut-outs SB page 127. coloured pens. scissors, string, coat hangers

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Science in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review life cycles

- Elicit what the four stages of a butterfly's life are called and write them on the board.
- Ask what students remember about each one.

0

Think! ISB p79 Write numbers to order the butterfly life cycle.

Aim: to review what students have learnt about life cycles

Thinking skills: sequencing and remembering

- Students read the four statements and put them in the right order.
- They compare their sequence in pairs.
- Check and discuss as a class.

Key: 1.4.2.3

Project SB p79 Make a mobile.

Aim: to enable students to follow instructions and collaborate

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Students make one mobile each.
- First they cut out the pictures from SB page I27 and colour them.
- Then they tie pieces of string to the pictures.
- They tie the other ends of the string to a coat hanger.
- Finally their mobiles are ready to hang.
- Students can either hang them in the classroom or take them home to hang there.

Write b (butterfly), e (egg), ch (chrysalis) or ca (caterpillar).

Aim: to further review what students have learnt about life cycles

Key: 2 ch. 3 e, 4 b, 5 b, 6 ca, 7 ch

WB p79 Read and colour.

Aim: to develop reading and motor skills

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. learnt more about the life cycle of a butterfly and I've made a mobile.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project, e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually, students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project and what the outcome was.
- Monitor and help as necessary.



 to draw out the students' creativity through mental imagery

New language: parents, presents, birthday cake, wear, crown, candle

Recycled language: birthday party, food, games, imperatives

Materials: CD, sheets of card, scissors, coloured pens

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to ideas and respond creatively.

Your students will be able to follow written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

Mime the face words for students to guess.

158 p80 Listen and imagine. Then draw your picture.

Aim: to enable students to listen, visualise and create their own pictures

- Tell students to put their heads on their desks, close their eyes and listen.
- Play the recording. At the end of the recording, speak quietly and tell students to listen again and imagine. Tell them they are going to draw the picture from their heads.

CD3 Track 17

T80

Close your eyes and relax. Imagine you're having a birthday party. Who's there? Your friends? Your parents? Imagine where it is, is it in a house or is it in a garden? What food is there? Are there lots of presents? What are the presents? Is there a birthday cake? What colour is it? Are there balloons? Are you playing games with your friends?

- Play the recording again.
- Students draw their own pictures of what they imagined.
- Go around the class and encourage students.
- Talk to them about their ideas and help if necessary.
- If you wish, students can stick their pictures onto coloured card.

2 58 pB0 Show your picture to your friends. Then ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice in describing a picture

- Read the examples from the Student's Book with the class.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.

- Go around the class quickly to provide the words students need in their discussions.
- Put students into groups of four for the descriptions.
- They take turns to show their pictures, talk about them and respond to questions.
- Tell students that they each have to ask one question about each of their friends' pictures.
- Volunteer students describe their pictures to the class.

10 WB p80 Make a cat birthday card.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of instructions to make a birthday card

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to compare their pictures

- Display student pictures from SB Activity 1 on tables or on the walls.
- Have students go around and see how many different birthday things, including food, they can find.
- Ask the students if any pictures have exactly the same presents.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to exploit their birthday cards

- Find out from students who in their family has a birthday coming up.
- Students write the cat birthday card for this person.
- Provide them with the language to use inside the card: Dear _____. Happy Birthday, From _____.
- Students make envelopes for their cards from paper and address them to the person.
- They take their cards home and give or post them to the person.



www.irLanguage.com

Alms:

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit, food

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to act out a play.

Warm-up

Aim: to review face words

- Draw an outline of a face on the board, like a circle.
- Students copy it into their notebooks and label it in pairs with the face words they can remember.
- Check by asking students to come to the board and draw and label the face words.

SE p81 Look, read and plan.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their knowledge of birthday parties and to encourage students to plan their work

- Read through the activity with the class.
- Make sure they know what they have to do. Put students into pairs.
- Tell students that they have to plan their party. Remind them to look back at the unit story if they need ideas.
- Remind them to use the useful language.
- Monitor and help pairs as necessary.
- Remind them to practise and rehearse their role plays.

SB p81 Act out your play.

Aim: to give students practice with productive and interactive speaking

- Invite pairs to come to the front of the class to act out their plays.
- In large classes, pairs can act out their plays in groups.
- Give students a listening task to make sure they concentrate, e.g. to write one present from each party.

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for face words

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for the face (WB page 125).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures, using words from the word bank.

WB p81 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 81.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

Alms:

- to present and practise transport vocabulary
- to say a chant with the class

New language: off we go, helicopter, boat, lorry, scooter, bus, skateboard, taxi, motorbike, jump, Are we going far?

Recycled language: plane, train, car

Materials: CD, flashcards (transport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name means of transport.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport words

- Mime plane, train and car and elicit the words.
- Write them on the board.
- Say, e.g. I come to school by car. How about you. (name)?
- The student answers. Supply other words as necessary, e.g. bus / taxi / I walk to school. Add the transport words to the board.
- Students continue asking and answering in open pairs.

Presentation

Aim: to present transport vocabulary

- Use the flashcards to present the means of transport.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word. in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board next to the words. as appropriate.
- Elicit and write the words for the other means of transport.

158 p82 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise transport vocabulary

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Play the recording.

CD3 Track 18 Flash: is this the bus to the beach? Thunder: Yes, Quick! Get on! The bus is leaving. Now say the words.

1 helicopter, 2 boat, 3 lorry, 4 scooter, 5 bus, 6 skateboard, 7 taxi, 8 motorbike

 Students point to the transport words when they hear them.

- Play the recording again. Students repeat the new words.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

SB p82 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the new words

- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach Are we going far?
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in four groups.
- Groups take turns to chant each verse while the others clap in time with the rhythm.

WB p82 Look at the pictures and do the crossword.

Aim: to practise spelling transport vocabulary

Key: 2 walk, 3 train, 4 scooter, 5 bike, 6 motorbike, 7 helicopter, 8 taxi, 9 lorry, 10 skateboard

1 W8 p82 Look at Activity 1. Draw number 10.

Aim: to consolidate understanding of vocabulary Key: A picture of a skateboard

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Mime a means of transport.
- Students guess, using yes/no guestions, e.g. Is it a bike?
- The student who guesses correctly comes to the front to mime the next one.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise information transfer and writing skills

- In groups of six, students ask and answer, using the model from the Warm-up.
- They note the information in their notebooks. e.g. (Name) - walk.
- They then write six sentences in their notebooks. e.g. I come to school by taxi. My friend, (name). walks to school. My friend,
- Monitor and support students as they are writing their sentences.



- to present and practise I'd like to ...
- to practise speaking skills

New language: sail. drive, by (motorbike, bus, etc.), dream

Recycled language: transport, countries, ride, fly, jungle, holiday

Materials: CD, flashcards (transport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to express wishes using I'd like to.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport words

- Write the first two letters of each transport word on the board, with dashes to show how many other letters there are in the word, e.g. bo
- With books closed, students write the words and compare their spellings in pairs.
- Place the flashcards on the board.
- Students come up in turn and write the word under the flashcard.

Presentation

Aim: to present I'd like ...

- Write fly next to plane on the board.
- Say, e.g. I can't fly a plane (look sad). Then say, e.g. I'd like to fly a plane. Maybe one day ...
- Repeat for two of the other means of transport, writing the relevant verb next to the word.
- Invite students to talk about their wishes by prompting How about you, (name)?
- Use concept questions to check understanding.

ISB p83 Motch the children with the pictures. Then write the words.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the sentences and at the pictures.
- Do the first one as an example with the class.
- Check students know what to do.
- They read silently, match and write the words in the speech bubbles.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 1 train, 2 helicopter, 3 motorbike, 4 boat

2 10 158 p83 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first sentence on the recording.
- Students repeat.

- Do the same for the second sentence.
- Students practise saying the sentences in pairs. They change the locations according to their preferences.

E3 158 p83 Talk about your dream holiday.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity by saying two or three sentences about your dream holiday, e.g. I'd like to go to China. I'd like to go there by train. I'd like to swim in the sea.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- Give them thinking and preparation time.
- Put students into pairs or groups of three.
- They take turns to talk about their dream holidays.
- Check some ideas using open pairs.

WB p83 Listen and number.

Aim: to practise the new language

CD3 Track 21

- 1 Id like to fly a helicopter.
- 2 Id like to drive a taxi.
- 3 Id like to ride a motorbike.
- 4 Id like to sail a boat.
- 5 Id like to have a scooter.

6 Id like to drive a lorry.

Key: 4 boat. 5 scooter. 3 motorbike. 2 taxi. 6 lorry

2 WB p83 Put the words in order.

Aim: to check students' comprehension of the form of the new language

Key: 2 I'd like to sail a boat. 3 I'd like to drive a bus. 4 I'd like to fly a plane. 5 I'd like to drive a train.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Students make circles in groups of six. Student A in each circle says, e.g. I'd like to go to Australia. The student to his/her right says. I'd like to fly a plane and she (or he)'d like to go to Australia.
- Chains continue around the circles.
- Restart the chain with another student in the circle and different sentences.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Students draw a picture in their notebooks to illustrate one of their wishes.
- They write the sentence under the picture.

to sing a song with the class

New language: wide, just, around, out there

Recycled language: transport, food, countries, animals, clothes

Materials: CD, flashcards (transport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to write their own verse for a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport words

- Write the transport words in jumbled letter order on the board.
- Students unscramble them in pairs.
- In turn, students come to the board, stick a flashcard next to the scrambled word and write it correctly.

19 SB pB4 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Pre-teach big, wide world.
- Use the picture to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in four groups.



Think! SB p84 Listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise listening and reading for specific information

Thinking skill: matching auditory with visual information

- Check students know what to do.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and number the pictures.
- Remind them to re-read the text as necessary.
- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 2, 7, 1, 4, 8, 3, 5, 6

WB p84 Read the song again and draw lines

Aim: to practise reading and memorisation skills

Key: Canada, 2 bear, 5 boots: Italy, 3 ice cream, 4 dream

2 WB p84 Write a verse.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

Ending the lesson

Aim: to sing a song

- Put students into groups of three. They prepare their new songs, using the verses they wrote for WB Activity 2.
- Use the karaoke version of the song as groups perform their new songs (they all sing the first verse as it is in the original song).

Extension activity

Aim: to stimulate creativity

 Students draw pictures in their notebooks to illustrate the verses they wrote for W8 Activity 2.



www.irLanguage.com

Aim:

 to present and practise the present continuous affirmative questions and answers

New language: wait for, look for, play with

Recycled language: transport

Materials: CD. flashcards (transport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask, answer and talk about actions at the moment of speaking using the present continuous.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport vocabulary

- Mime a transport word for students to guess.
- The student who guesses correctly mimes another word.
- Put all the transport flashcards on the board at the end of the game. Elicit the verb for each one and write it under the flashcard, e.g. drive under bus.

Presentation

Aim: to present the present continuous affirmative

- Mime one of the actions from the Warm-up again. Say. e.g. I'm riding a motorbike.
- Invite a student to mime another action. The student says, e.g. I'm driving a bus.
- Say, e.g. She's/He's driving a bus.
- Repeat.
- Introduce the question form by having a student mime and then ask the class What's he/she doing?
- Introduce the plural forms by having groups of students mime together.

\$8 p85 Read and match.

Aim: to practise the present continuous

- Students read the speech bubbles and look at the pictures in the Student's Book.
- Check they know what to do.
- Students read silently and match the speech bubbles with the pictures.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class, having pairs read out the questions and answers.

Key: 1 c. 2 d. 3 b. 4 a

SB p85 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.

Students practise the questions and answers in pairs.

3 58 p85 Play the mime game.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity with the class.
- Student A mimes an action. Student B says, e.g. What are you doing? Are you riding a scooter? Student A says, e.g. Yes. I am or No. I'm not. I'm riding a motorbike.
- Students play the game in pairs. Remind them to check for the correct verbs on the board.

Think! W8 p85 Match the questions with the answers.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language Thinking skill: matching

Key: a 2, b 4, c 5, d (1), e 6, f 3

WB p85 Look and draw lines.

Aim: to consolidate students' understanding of vocabulary

Key: 2 e, 3 b, 4 d, 5 c, 6 f

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Write a question and answer in jumbled word order on the board.
- Students work in pairs to put them in the right order.
- Then they do the actions. Student A mimes the action and Student B asks the question. e.g. Are you riding a motorbike? Student A answers, e.g. No, I'm not. I'm sailing a boat.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with the present continuous

 Mime a short story for students to follow and to say what you are doing as it happens, e.g. mime looking for something in your bag, taking out an apple, eating the apple, rubbing your tummy and smiling.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

New language: trip, beach, move, sheep, tyre, airport, my turn

Recucied language: language from the story. no problem, we've got a problem

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story. Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special. powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask, e.g. Whose birthday is it? What games do they play? (Thunder's, They play Pin the tail on the donkey, a three-legged race and Tug of war.)

58 pp86-87 The bus trip

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach beach.
- Play the recording. Students listen for where the Super Friends want to go (the beach) and where the bus is going (the airport).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class. Check understanding of airport.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use 1.1 to talk about some of their ideas.)

WB p86 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD3 Track 27

- Driver: There are lots of sheep on the road. Look!
- 2 Sheep: CK, Have a good day!
- 3 Thunder: you're welcome!

Key: 1 1st picture, 2 2nd picture, 3 2nd picture



WB p86 Write the words. Then read the story and check.

Aim: to check understanding of words in the story Key: 2 sheep. 3 problem. 4 airport



Think! W8 p85 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching Key: 2 We can help. 3 Thanks.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of six.
- Students take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to activate students' imaginations

- In groups of four, students make up a short role play to illustrate the phrases from WB Activity 3.
- Go around the groups and help / make suggestions.
- Pairs role play their situations for the class. The only words they say are: We've got a problem. We can help. Thanks.
- The other students have to guess what the problem is and how their friends help them.

T86

- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise saying the long vowel sound oo which can be spelt in many ways
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

New language: plane

Recycled language: language from the story Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to identify the long vowel sound /u;/ in many words, e.g. two, you, blue, fruit, pool, ruler, rule, do, chew and move).

Your students will be able to look for the decodable parts of special words.

Value: being generous

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. Where are the Super Friends going? Are they on a train? (To the beach. No, they're on a bus.)

USB p87 Look at the story and find the things. Write the numbers of the pictures.

Aim: to focus students on the content of the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- They look at the story and number the means of transport according to the story frames.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: a plane 8, a boat 6, a motorbike 2, a bike 3, a helicopter 1, a taxi 8

E3 58 p87 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the long vowel sound oo

- Write you and do on the board, with the letters in bold in red. Point out that they have the same long oo sound as in too and room.
- Tell them there are many different spellings for the long oo sound.
- Students repeat It's my turn to help you! after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 8).

Key: The bus driver

SB p87 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the long oo sound and recognise some different spellings

 Play the recording. Students look at the picture, read and repeat.

CD3 Track 28

oo - oo - oo Luke's chewing Sue's new blue shoes. Luke's chewing Sue's new blue shoes!

- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values | WB p87 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of being generous Key: Picture 1

WB p87 Write the letters.

Aim: to practise the long oo sound in words with different spellings

1 WB p87 Listen, say and check your answers.

CD3 Track 29 Two. you. blue. fruit. shoes. scooter

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the long oo letter sound and its different spellings

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Write two columns on the board, one titled oo and the other /u:/. Read out these words in random order while students write them in the column: pool, room, food, school, zoo: you, true, juice, two, do.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of being generous

- Focus on what happens in frame 8 of the story and how the bus driver is generous (he offers to take them to the beach).
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students have been generous or when people have been generous to them.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

to practise speaking skills

Skills:

speaking

New language: museum, transport

Recycled language: transport, colours, prepositions of place, imperatives

Materials: CD, flashcards (transport), Unit 7 stickers, scissors

Language competences: Your students will be able to speak about a picture.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport words

- Use the flashcards to review transport words.
- Show each one quickly to the class and they guess/ say the word.

58 p88 Listen to your teacher and stick.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information 🕚

- Pre-teach Museum of Transport.
- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book. Elicit what they can see.
- Students prepare their stickers.

Note: In order to carry out this activity, students will first need to cut out their stickers with the backs attached.

- Say the words. Students hold up the relevant sticker.
- Give instructions for students to follow, e.g. Put the bird in the sky. Put the cap on the girl near the plane. Put the bicycle on the train.
- Students compare their pictures in pairs and say where the stickers are.

SB p88 Look and say.

Aim: to practise speaking skills

- Demonstrate the activity for the class by saying where one of the stickers is.
- Students do the activity in pairs, taking turns to say where each sticker is.
- Students hide their Student's Books from each other.
 Student A puts his/her stickers in different places and tells Student B where they are. Student B listens and puts his/her stickers in the same place.
- Students look and check.
- Students swap roles.
- Finally students stick their stickers in the correct places (from Activity 1).

1 WB p88 Listen and colour.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information 🎕

CD3 Track 30

Man: Can you see the tax? Boy: yes. Man: Colour it grey, Bou: A greu taxi. OK. Man: Now find the skateboard. Bour The skateboard, OK, Here it is. Marx OK. Colour the skateboard green and blue. Boy: A green and blue skateboard, Lovely, Man: Next. let's colour the lorry. Bou: What colour? Man: Red and blue. Boy: OK, A red and blue lorry. Man: Now find the helicopter. Bour The helicopter. Got it. Man: Colour it orange. Boy: OK. An orange helicopter. Man: Now for the last one. Look for the bus and colour it purple. Boy: A purple bus. That's very pretty. Man: That's right. The picture looks lovely now.

Key: green and blue skateboard, red and blue lorry, orange helicopter, purple bus

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review language

- Elicit from students what they would like to see in the Museum of Transport.
- They write a sentence in their notebooks, e.g. I'd like to see the old plane in the Museum of Transport.
- If time, they draw a picture to illustrate the sentence.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to personalise the topic

- Brainstorm means of transport with the class and create a word map on the board.
- In pairs, students choose transport from the word map and make their own posters for a Museum of Transport.
- Students either draw pictures of the means of transport or cut out and stick pictures from magazines.
- Students label the different forms of transport on their posters.
- Display the posters around the class.

www.irLanguage.com

Aim:

• to practise listening, reading and writing skills Skills:

- listening for specific information
- reading for detail
- writing a description from a model

New language: amazing, very, quite a journey, Would you like ... ?

Recycled language: transport, family, adjectives Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to read for detail. Your students will be able to write a description.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport words

- Play a guessing game. Say, e.g. I'm thinking of some transport. It's got two wheels and it hasn't got an engine. One person can ride on it.
- Students take turns to guess, e.g. Is it a bicycle?
- Continue with students giving the descriptions.

158 p89 Listen and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise listening skills

- Tell students they are going to listen to a girl's journey. to her grandma's.
- Play the recording. They listen and number the pictures.

CD3 Track 31

Girl: My grandma lives on a small island in Scotland. We go to visit her every summer. It's quite a journey. First we take a taxi to the train station. Then we get on a train. The train takes us from London to Glasgow. When we get to Glasgow we get on a bus to take us to the airport. Then we get on a plane (a very small plane) and we fly to Kirkwall, It's a town on the Orkney Islands. But our journey isn't over yet. We still have to get on a boat to go to another island called Eday. That's where my grandma lives,

- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again. Check with the class.
- Keu: 5, 1, 4, 3, 2

158 p89 Read and tick (/) the things that the car has got.

Aim: to practise reading skills

- Elicit what students can see in the photos.
- Pre-teach amazing.
- Students read the text to find out what the car has got.

- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: bed, TV, swimming pool, sofa



58 p89 Draw and write about an amazing car. bus, train or plane.

Aim: to give students practice writing from a model

- Brainstorm some ideas for amazing cars, buses, trains and planes.
- Write the ideas on the board in note form.
- They each make a mind map about their means of transport and draw a picture.
- Students write a first draft of their descriptions.
- Check drafts before students write the final description next to their picture.

WB p89 Read, look and draw lines.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail Key: 2 b, 3 d, 4 a and c



Think! WB p89 Read again. Where do they live? Write the names.

Aim: to give students further practice with reading skills Thinking skill: logical-mathematical

Key: Luke, Diana, Dylan

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the content of the lesson

- Ask students who wrote about which forms of transport for SB Activity 3.
- Find out which was the most popular.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise close observation

- Make four areas on the walls of the classroom. Each is for display of the pictures and drawings from SB Activity 3: car, plane, etc.
- Students display their drawings and text in the appropriate place, but they don't put them together. They put all the drawings at the top of the space and all the texts at the bottom.
- Go around numbering the texts and write letters on the pictures.
- Students go to an area, not the one where their text and picture are.
- Students work in pairs, reading and matching the pictures with the texts.
- See which pair got the most matches correct.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Maths

New language: measure, height, length, centimetres, millimetres

Recycled language: transport

Materials: rulers

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Maths in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of measurement

- Invite six students to come to the front of the class.
- Arrange them in height order.
- Elicit from the class how you have sequenced the students.
- Pre-teach height.
- Tell the class that this lesson is about measuring things.

SB p90 Look and read. Write a or b.

Aim: to extend students' understanding of measuring

- Pre-teach length.
- Read the two sentences aloud around the class.
- Students do the task together and check in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: height: line b, length: line a

SB p90 Read, look and measure.

Aim: to practise reading for detail

- Pre-teach cm/centimetres and mm/millimetres.
- Read the instruction with students and check they know what to do.
- Students work in pairs and do the measuring.
- They compare answers with another pair.
- Check with the class.

Key: pencil C = 8.9cm, pencil D = 14.2cm

Ise performance of the second seco

Aim: to enable students to apply what they have learnt

- Put students into pairs.
- Tell students to measure six things.
- Pairs measure and record.
- They write the results in their notebooks.

WB p90 Write h (height) or l (length) in the boxes

Aim: to give students further practice with measuring

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today *I've learnt about:*
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. length and height and I've measured things in the classroom.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to further apply what they have learnt

- Invite six students to the front.
- Tell them to stand in sequence according to the length of their hair.
- Elicit from the rest of the class if they are correct.
- Students then measure the hair of the student with the longest hair.
- Repeat with other groups of students for. e.g. length of sleeves, length of shirts, length of feet.



- to extend the focus on Maths through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: tape measure, metre, How tall are ... ?, measurement

Recycled language: measuring

Materials: tape measures

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Maths in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review measuring

- Elicit what different kinds of measuring students did in the previous lesson.
- Write cm and mm on the board and elicit what these stand for (centimetres and millimetres).

SB p91 Read, look and measure.

Aim: to enable students to apply their knowledge and experience

- Pre-teach tape measure using realia, and metre.
- Students read the problem silently and try to solve it individually.
- They compare and discuss their answers in pairs.
- Check and discuss as a class.

Key: Nora 1.30m, Jim 1.45m

Use a tape measure to measure the height of three friends.

Aim: to give students practice in measuring

- Divide the class in half, A and B.
- Put students in Group A into pairs. Give each pair a tape measure.
- Pairs measure three students in Group B.
- Put students in Group B into pairs. Give each pair a tape measure.
- Pairs measure three students in Group A.

Project Think! SB p91 Guess and measure.

Aim: to enable students to apply what they have learnt, follow instructions and collaborate

Thinking skills: predicting and checking

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Make groups of four. Supply each group with a tape measure.
- Each student copies the table into their notebook.

- Check students have all written their guesses in the column before they go and measure the items.
- Monitor and help each group as necessary.
- Discuss as a class the outcomes and how good they were at guessing.

WB p91 Use a ruler. Measure and write.

Aim: to give students practice in writing measurements

Key: 2 The motorbike is 4cm long and 3cm high. 3 The boat is 4.5cm long and 4cm high. 4 The skateboard is 3cm long and 1cm high. 5 The scooter is 3cm long and 3cm high. 6 The bus is 6cm long and 4.5cm high.

Think! W8 p91 Write the missing numbers.

Aim: to consolidate students' understanding of the relationship between millimetres and centimetres Thinking skill: logical-mathematical

Key: 2 7, 3 23, 4 12, 5 6, 6 2, 7 5/45, 8 8/79

W8 p91 Measure at home and write.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their understanding

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. learnt more about measuring, measured three friends and measured some things in the classroom.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project, e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually, students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project and what the outcome was.
- Monitor and help as necessary.

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

Aim:

 to stimulate the students' imagination through listening and acting out

New language: umbrella, puddle, too late

Recycled language: imperatives

Materials: CD, sheets of card, scissors, washing-up liquid, coloured pens, water

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen and do actions to demonstrate meaning.

Your students will be able to follow auditory, written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review instructions and mime

 Give students some simple instructions to mime, e.g. You're on your way to school. You see your best friend on the bus. Wave at him or her. You see your teacher on the bus. She's waving at you. You wave back at her.

158 p92 Listen and act out with your teacher. Then listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions and in sequencing information

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording and mime the actions.

CD3 Track 32

- You're waiting for bus number 11.
- 2 It's starting to rain.
- Open your umbrella.
- 4 The rain stops, Close your umbrella.
- 5 Look-here comes a bus.
- 6 Look down! There's a puddle in front of you.
- 7 Jump out of the way.
- 8 Too late! Splash!
- Mime the actions without the recording and check understanding through mime.
- Play the recording again and mime the actions. Students mime the actions with you.
- Students listen again and sequence the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 3. 5. 7. 1. 6. 8. 4. 2

ESB p92 Read and number the sentences from the story.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail

- Read the eight instructions aloud.
- Students individually match the instructions with the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check by asking one student to read an instruction aloud, another to mime the action and another to say the number.

Key: 1st column: 6, 4, 1; 2nd column: 3, 7, 2, 8, 5

SB p92 Listen to your friend and act out.

Aim: to give students practice in giving and following instructions

- Demonstrate the activity by giving the instructions in random order for the class to follow.
- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Invite more confident students to role play their instructions in front of the class.

WB p92 Make a speed boat.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of visual and written instructions to make a speed boat

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

 Play a game of 'Simon says', using the instructions from SB Activity 2. When you say Simon says before the instruction, students mime it. When you do not say Simon says, students do not mime it.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to compare and discuss their speed boats

- Put students into groups of four.
- They take turns to describe and compare their speed boats (what colour they are, etc.) and to predict which boat is the fastest.
- They put them in water and try them out to find out which is the fastest.

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

New language: miss a turn

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit, the face, food, furniture

Materials: flashcards (transport), counters and dice for the game

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to play a game.

Warm-up

Aim: to review transport vocabulary

- Stick the eight flashcards on the board and write a number under each one.
- Students draw a 2 x 2 grid in their books. They write a number in each square (from the board).
- Call out transport words at random. Students put a cross through a square if it has the corresponding number.
- The first student to cross all four squares is the winner.

SB p93 The roads and rail tracks game

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their understanding by playing a game

- Elicit some of the different means of transport students can see in the game.
- Demonstrate the game with a small group.
- Students each take a counter and take turns to throw the dice and move their counter.
- When a student lands on a square, he/she says the word. If he/she cannot say it, the student misses a turn.
- Students move up the roads with the up arrows and down the tracks with the down arrows.
- The student who gets to the Finish first is the winner.
- Make sure everyone knows what they have to do.
 Put students into groups of four.
- Monitor as necessary.
- Early finishers can play the game again.

Key: helicopter, taxi, motorbike, boat, bike, skateboard, scooter, bus, plane, train, lorry, nose, eyes, mouth, face, ears, bread, potatoes, tomatoes, beans, pears, mangos, pineapples, lemons, bed, sofa, clock, mat, table, mirror, lamp

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for transport

 Students look at the Picture dictionary page for transport (WB page 126).

- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures, using words from the word bank.

I WB p93 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 93.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise sport words
- to say a chant with the class

New language: sports club, badminton, baseball, basketball, football, hockey, table tennis, tennis, swimming, athletics, volleyball, forget, join

Recycled language: let's, lots of

Materials: CD, flashcards (sport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name sports.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sports

- Mime a known sport, e.g. swimming.
- Tell students that this is a sport.
- Write Sport on the board in a circle and build a word. map of other sports students do.
- Remind them of any sports clubs or after school activities that they do.

Presentation

Aim: to present sports vocabulary

- Show the flashcards of sports mentioned in the Warmup, elicit the words and stick them on the board around the word map.
- Use the other flashcards to present the new sports.
- Say the word for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the word in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board around the word map.

132 158 p94 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise sports vocabulary

- Students look at the picture of the sports board in the Student's Book.
- Play the recording.

CD3 Track 33

Teacher: Look at all the sports you can do? Misty: I'd like to play football. Flash: Let's join the club.

Thunder: I'd like to join the tennis club, What about you, Whisper?

Whisper: I think I'll join the swimming club.

Now say the words.

1 badminton, 2 basebali, 3 basketball, 4 football,

5 hockey 6 table tennis, 7 tennis, 8 swimming, 9 athletics. 10 vollegball

- Students point to the sports words when they hear them.
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the new words.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

2 58 p94 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the new words

- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach join.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant. in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in four groups.
- Groups take turns to chant each verse while the others clop in time with the rhythm.

WB p94 Look and write.

Aim: to practise spelling sport vocabulary

Keu: 2 baseball, 3 basketball, 4 football, 5 hockey. 6 table tennis, 7 tennis, 8 swimming, 9 athletics. 10 volleyball

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Mime a sport.
- Students guess, using yes/no questions, e.g. Is it basketball?
- The student who quesses correctly comes to the front to mime the next one.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise information transfer and writing skills

- In groups of four, students take turns to tell each other which sports they like best.
- They make a group poster to show which are their favourite sports.
- Go around the class and help as appropriate.
- Groups display their posters.
- Elicit from the class which their favourite sport is (from information on the posters).
- to present and practise -ing forms, e.g. Flying is
- to practise speaking skills

New language: boring, fun

Recycled language: sport, adjectives

Materials: CD, flashcards (sport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to make sentences using -ing forms.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport words

- Students take turns to come to the front.
- They secretly take a flashcard and mime the sport for the class to guess.
- The student who guesses correctly comes and takes the next flashcard.

Presentation

Aim: to present -ing forms

- · Hold up one of the flashcards, e.g. table tennis.
- Say I like playing table tennis. Playing table tennis is fun.
- Repeat for other sports and activities. Use different adjectives and negatives, e.g. I don't like swimming. Swimming is boring.
- Write two or three sentences with the -ing form on the board as examples.
- Invite students to contribute their ideas about different. sports.

158 p95 Look and draw lines from the pictures to the sentences. Then listen and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the sentences and at the pictures in the Student's Book.
- Do the first one as an example with the class.
- Check students know what to do.
- They read silently and match.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check answers with the class.
- Play the recording. Students write the numbers.

CD3 Track 35

- Swimming is fun.
- 3 Playing tennis is difficult. 2 Playing baseball is boring. 4 Dancing is great.
- They compare answers in pairs. Check with the class. playing the recording again as necessary.

Key: 1 c. 2 d. 3 b. 4 a

5B p95 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first sentence on the recording. Students repeat.
- Do the same for the second sentence.
- Students practise saying the sentences in pairs. They change the sports according to their preferences.

3) \$8 p95 Look and draw lines. Then ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Brainstorm adjectives students can use: boring. fun. areat, fantastic, difficult, exciting, easy and dangerous.
- Students match the words with the pictures.
- Demonstrate the activity by prompting a student to ask you the question and answering, e.g. Flying a kite's fun.
- In pairs, students take turns to ask and answer about the different sports and activities.
- Check some ideas using open pairs.

Key: flying - a kite, painting - a picture. watching - TV, making - a cake, listening to - music. riding – a horse, reading – a book, playing – in the sand

WB p95 Find eight words.

Aim: to practise the new language

Key: 2 paint. 3 watch, 4 make, 5 listen, 6 ride, 7 read. 8 play

WB p95 Write the words.

Aim: to practise spelling of the new language

Key: 2 painting, 3 watching, 4 making, 5 listening. 6 riding, 7 reading, 8 playing

WB p95 Write five sentences with the words.

Aim: to give further practice with the language

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Make a statement, e.g. Riding a motorbike is great fun. (Student's name).
- The student makes a statement about another sport and adds another student's name.
- Continue until all students have made a statement.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students draw a picture in their notebooks to illustrate one of their statements.
- They write the sentence under the picture.

- to consolidate the -ing form
- to sing a song with the class

Recycled language: sport, activities, adjectives

Materials: CD. flashcards (sport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to write their own verse for a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport words

- Write the sport words in jumbled letter order on the board.
- Students unscramble them in pairs.
- In turn, students come to the board, stick a flashcard next to the scrambled word and write it correctly.

USB p96 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book.
- Use the pictures to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in four groups.

ESB p96 Choose words and read out your new verse.

Aim: to practise writing from a model

- Check students know what to do.
- They write their new verses in pairs.
- Monitor and help as necessary.

T96

Students read out their new verses.



I WB p96 Look and circle the things they do in the song. Draw lines between the words and your circles.

Aim: to practise reading and memorisation skills

Ending the lesson

Aim: to sing a song

- Put students into groups of eight (four pairs). They
 prepare their new songs, using the verses they wrote
 for 5B Activity 2.
- Use the karaoke version of the song as groups perform their new songs.

Extension activity

Aim: to stimulate creativity

 Students draw pictures in their notebooks to illustrate the verse they wrote for SB Activity 2.

- to present and practise like + -ing affirmative and questions
- to present and practise responses So do I. Me too, I don't

New language: like + -ing, So do I, Me too

Recycled language:sport

Materials: CD, flashcards (sport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer about what sports and activities they like doing.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport vocabulary

- Mime a sport for students to guess.
- The student who guesses correctly mimes another sport.
- Put all the sport flashcards on the board at the end of the game. Elicit the verb for each one and then a sentence with the -ing form.

Presentation

Aim: to present like + -ing form

- Mime one of the actions from the Warm-up again. Say, e.g. I like flying kites.
- Ask a student What do you like doing?
- Prompt on answer with like + -ing form.
- Ask several other students in the same way.
- Continue practising in open pairs to give students practice with the question as well.

\$8 p97 Listen and number the pictures.

Aim: to practise like + -ing form

- Students look at the pictures in the Student's Book before they listen.
- Play the recording. Students number the pictures.

CD3 Track 39

- 1 Girl: What do you like doing. Tom? Bog like doing athletics. Bog like swimming. Girt Me too.
- 3 Girl: Mark, what do you like doing?
 - Girl: So do L
- (ke doing?) Girl: Hike playing table bennis, Bout I cion't.
- 2 Boy: Fional what do you 4 Girl: Ben, what do you like doing? Boy like playing football, Girt I don't.
- They compare in pairs. Play the recording again.
- Check, eliciting the target sentence for each one.
- Play the recording again, focussing on the responses.

Key: 3. 4. 1. 2

58 p97 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the recording. Students listen and repeat in chorus.
- Repeat.
- Students practise the question and answers in pairs.

SB p97 Ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity with the class.
- Students work in pairs.
- Students take turns to ask and answer.
- Clap your hands. Students change pairs.
- Repeat several times.

WB p97 Read and circle.

Aim: to give students practice with the form of the new language

Key: 2 reading, 3 going, 4 doing

WB p97 Write the words.

Aim: to consolidate students' understanding of the new language

Key: 2 playing football, 3 swimming, 4 playing table tennis. 5 playing tennis. 6 playing badminton

WE p97 Draw a picture and write.

Aim: to enable students to personalise the language

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Write a question and answer in jumbled word order on the board.
- Students work in pairs to put them in the right order.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with spelling -ing forms

- Write the verbs from the unit on the board in the simple infinitive.
- Students work in pairs. They write the -ing form for each one, looking back in the Student's Book as necessary.
- Tell the students to make three groups of the words. Provide them with examples: ride - riding, play playing, swim - swimming.
- Elicit and check as a class.

Alms:

- to present a picture story
- to review longuage from the unit

New language: team, full, start, goal, well done, try harder

Recycled language: language from the story, sport, adjectives, Can I ... ?

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story.

Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask, e.g. Where are the friends going? What happens to the bus? Where is the bus going? Who returns the favour?

(1) SB pp98-99 The football club

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach team and full.
- Play the recording. Students listen for which team wins at the end (the yellow team).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of their ideas.)

WB p98 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD3 Track 42

- Misty: You can join the table tennis club.
- 2 Flash: Do you want to play a game?
- 3 Boy: Do you want to be in my team?

Key: 1 1st picture, 2 1st picture, 3 1st picture



W8 p98 Read the story. Then read and tick (the boxes.

Aim: to check understanding of the story Key: 2 no. 3 no. 4 yes



Think! W8 p98 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching Key: 2 Try harder. 3 Great goal!

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of five.
- Students take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to activate students' imaginations

- In groups of three, students make up a short role. play to illustrate the phrases from WB Activity 3. Change Great goal! to Well done!
- Go around the groups and help / make suggestions.
- Pairs role play their situations for the class. The only words they say are Can I play with you? Try harder. Well done!
- The other students have to guess what the sport/ activity is.

T98

- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise saying the long vowel sound oa as in boat and yellow. This phoneme is called a diphthong (the mouth changes shape as it is made).
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

New language: score

Recycled language: language from the story Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to say the letter sound oa and identify the alternative spelling o_e (e.g. hole), called a split digraph. They can contrast this sound with the short o.

Value: including people

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

 Ask questions about the story, e.g. What club does Flash want to join? (Football.) Does she like playing table tennis? (No, she doesn't.)

S8 p99 Read and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to focus students on the content of the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- They read the sentences and tick the boxes.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1 yes. 2 no. 3 yes. 4 yes. 5 no

58 p99 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the letter sound oa

- Write goal on the board, using a red pen for the oa.
 Separate out and blend the phonemes (g oa l).
- Students repeat Great goal, Misty! after you.
- Students find the speech bubble in the story (frame 7).
 Key: Whisper

G SB p99 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise the long on sound and recognise some alternative spellings

Play the recording. Students look, read and repeat.

CD3 Track 43

- ca ca ca
- A hippo and a goat with a hole in their boat. A hippo and a goat with a hole in their boat!
- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values | WB p99 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of including people Key: Picture 2

2 W8 p99 Read and colour the hippo.

Aim: to practise the long on sound and contrast it with the short sound o

3 IWB p99 Listen, say and check your picture.

CD3 Track 44 Yellow - hippo, throw, goal, go, no. don't Orange - hockey, frog, stop, box, socks

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review the long oa sound and its alternative spellings

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- Other words ending in o with the oa letter sound are: mango. tomato and potato.
- Other words students have learnt with the split digraph o_e as in hole are: nose and clothes.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of including people

- Focus on what happens in the story and how not including people makes them feel.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students were excluded and how they felt.

Note: This topic needs to be handled very sensitively in the classroom. Some of the discussion may also need to take place in L1.



- to practise listening, speaking and writing skills
 Skills:
- listening for specific information
- interactive speaking
- writing (collating information)

Recycled language: sport

Materials: CD. flashcords (sport)

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to speak to exchange information.

Your students will be able to write sentences collating information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport words

- Use the flashcards to review sport words.
- Show each one quickly to the class and they guess/ say the word and mime the sport.

1 3 DSB p100 Listen and tick (/) the boxes.

Aim: to practise listening for specific information

- Students look at the table in the Student's Book.
- Check they know what to do.
- Play the recording. Students listen and tick.

CD3 Track 45

lan: Jenny. what's your favourite sport?

Jenny: That's easy, Tennis, I love tennis,

lan: What about football?

Jenny: Yes, I like football too.

lan: Any other sports?

Jenny: Yes. I like volleyball. I like playing volleyball on the beach. And I like athletics. I like watching that on TV.

lan: Are there any sports that you don't like?

Jenny: I don't like basketball.

lan: What about swimming?

Jenny: No, and I don't like swimming. It's boring.

- Now, it's your turn. What's your favourite sport?
- Ian: Well, Hove football, Hove playing it and Hove watching it on TV.

Jenny: And what about tennis?

lan: No, I don't like tennis. It's boring,

Jenny: No. it isn't.

lan: And I don't like badminton or swimming. And I don't like volleyball.

Jenny: So you only like football?

lan: No. I like basketball too. That's a good sport.

- Jenny: And what about athletics?
- lan: No. I don't like athletics.

- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.

		Jenny	Ion
football	0	1	1
	0		
tennis	0	1	
	0		1
swimming	0		
	0	1	1
basketball	0		1
	8	/	
volleyball	0	1	and the
. enisterni	8		1
athletics	0	1	
Granic Geo	0		1

SB p100 Ask and answer.

Aim: to practise asking and answering questions

- Students go around the class asking everyone what their favourite sport is.
- They keep a note of students' responses using lines as in the Student's Book.



S8 p100 Now write about your class and make a bar chart.

Aim: to give students practice in interpreting information

- Students write the results from their surveys in Activity 2 in a list.
- They draw a bar chart using the one in the Student's Book as a model.

WB p100 Look and read. Write yes or no.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information a Key: 2 no. 3 no. 4 yes, 5 no. 6 yes

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review language

- Give students 30 seconds to study the picture in WB Activity 1. Then they close their Workbooks.
- Elicit what they can remember about the picture.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students writing practice

- Students write in their notebooks about their favourite sport and draw a picture.
- In their texts, they say the name of the sport, why they like it and when and where they play it.



to practise reading skills

Skills:

reading for specific information

Recycled language: sport

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport words

- Make statements about the survey in the previous lesson, e.g. This is five students' favourite sport. Do you remember what it is?
- Students try to remember without looking in their books.
- Repeat for the other sports mentioned in the class survey.

SB p101 Look and read. Write yes or no.

Aim: to practise reading skills

- Tell students to read the instruction silently.
- Check they know what to do.
- They read the statements and write the one-word answers.
- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.
- Elicit corrected sentences for the no statements.

Key: 1 yes, 2 no, 3 no, 4 yes, 5 no, 6 yes

WB p101 Listen and number.

Aim: to give students practice in listening for detail

CD3 Track 46

Girt Can I help you? Boy: Yes, I'd like to join the badminton club. Can I ask some questions? Girt Yes, of course, Boy: When is the club? Girt It's on Mondays and Fridays. Boy: Where is it? Girt It's in the school sports hall. Boy: Is it for girls and boys? Girt Yes, It's for everyone. Boy: Thank you. Girt That's OK. Bye! Key: o 2, b 11, c 10, d 12, e 7, f 8, g 9.

h 3. i 4. j (1). k 6. l 5



Think! WB p101 Look at the pictures. Write sentences.

Aim: to give students practice with interpreting pictures

Thinking skill: interpreting pictures

Key: 2 She's playing badminton. 3 He's playing basketball. 4 He's playing hockey. 5 She's playing football. 6 She's playing basketball.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review sports

- Students take turns to come to the front individually and in pairs or groups, to role play a sport.
- The other students take turns to guess.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise role plays

- In pairs, students practise the role play in WB Activity 1.
- Students can personalise the role play by changing the days and the sports, etc.
- More confident pairs then role play the conversation for the class.

www.irLanguage.com

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Science

New language: breathing, breathe in, breathe out, air, lungs, chest

Recycled language: the body

Materials: CD, balloons, string, rulers

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known vocabulary to talk about Science in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of breathing

- Teach breathing and focus students on their breaths in and out. Tell them they are quite slow.
- Tell students to stand up with space around them.
- Clap you hands. Students start running on the spot.
- After about a minute, clap for them to stop.
- Ask them what they notice about their breathing now. Is it faster?

(1) SB p102 Listen and read about sport and breathing. Write the words.

Aim: to extend students' understanding of breathing and lungs

- Pre-teach lungs and chest.
- Play the recording. Students listen and read.
- Check understanding of vocabulary.
- They write the words and compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class. Students demonstrate breathing in and breathing out.

Key: 1st picture - breathing in

2nd picture - breathing out



Think! SB p102 Find out how much breath there is in your lungs.

Aim: to enable students to learn by doing Thinking skills: comparing and evaluating

- Read through the steps of the experiment with the class.
- Make sure they know what to do.
- Put students into pairs or small groups.
- Hand out the equipment to the students.
- They take turns to do the experiment and to record the results.
- Discuss results as a whole class.

WB p102 Look and write the words.

Aim: to practise the new language

Key: 1 breathing in, 2 breathing out





2 WB p102 Alex has the smallest amount of breath. Number from smallest to biggest.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate what they have learnt

Keu: Kim 2, Sue 3, Nick 4

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. breathing in and out and how much breath there is in my lungs.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to further apply what they have learnt

- Brainstorm six sports.
- Put students into pairs.
- They rank the sports and activities in order from the ones in which they breathe more to the ones in which they breathe less.
- Elicit and discuss as a class.



- to extend the focus on Science through English
- to enable students to complete a project

New language: on the spot. bar code

Recycled language: sport, breathing and lungs

Materials: stopwatches (optional), poster paper, pens, coloured paper, scissors, glue

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Science in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review breathing

- Students stand up.
- Tell them to breathe in slowly as you count to six, to hold their breath as you count to six and to breathe out slowly as you count to six.
- Repeat two or three times.

Project SB p103 Find out more about breathing and sport.

Aim: to enable students to follow instructions and collaborate

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Read through all the instructions as a class.
- Make pairs. Students predict the number of breaths before they do the experiment.
- One student counts, or uses a stopwatch if available, while the other breathes for a minute and then they swap roles. Tell students to breathe as normally as they can.
- Monitor and help each pair as necessary.

158 p103 Now make a bar code for your class.

Aim: to enable students to make a bar code

- Discuss the outcomes as a class and elicit all the information from different pairs.
- Students make a bar code for the class, using the one in the Student's Book as a model.



Think! WB p103 Tick (/) the activities where you breathe more.

Aim: to enable students to apply what they have learnt Thinking skill: applying knowledge of the world Keu: 3, 4

ey. 3. 4

WB p103 Make sentences.

Aim: to enable students to record what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've...
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. counted how many times I breathe in a minute and made a bar code.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project. e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually, students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project, what the outcome was and what they learnt.
- Monitor and help as necessary.

 to draw out the students' creativity through mental imagery

New language: match, trophy

Recycled language: sport, adjectives, imperatives

Materials: CD, pencils, paper cups, string, foil, scissors

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to ideas and respond creatively. Your students will be able to follow written and

visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sport words

- Mime a sport. Students guess, using yes/no questions, e.g. Are you playing tennis?
- The first one to guess mimes a sport for the class to ask about and guess.
- Pre-teach match and trophy.

158 p104 Listen and imagine. Then draw your picture.

Aim: to enable students to listen, visualise and create their own pictures

- Tell students to put their heads on their desks, close their eyes and listen.
- Play the recording. At the end of the recording, speak quietly and tell students to listen again and imagine. Tell them they are going to draw the picture from their heads.

CD3 Track 48

You're playing in a sports match. You're playing well, You are very excited, Yes! You win the game. The teacher gives you a trophy, What a trophy! It's fantastic. You lift your trophy up high. Everyone cheers. You look at your trophy. Your beautiful trophy. Draw it.

- Play the recording again.
- Students draw their own pictures of what they imagined.
- Go around the class and encourage students.
- Talk to them about their ideas and help if necessary.

Ise p104 Write about your picture. Then listen to your friends and guess.

Aim: to give students practice in describing a picture

- Read the example from the Student's Book with the class.
- Remind students to use adjectives and other words to make their descriptions more interesting.
- Students write their descriptions. Monitor and help as necessary.
- Put students into groups of four.
- One student describes their trophy and the others guess which is their picture.

WB p104 Make a ball in the cup game.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of instructions to make a game

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to compare their pictures

- Display students' pictures from SB Activity 1 on tables or on the walls.
- Have students go around and look at the trophies. They decide which is the most beautiful.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to exploit their ball in the cup games

- Show students how to play the ball in the cup game.
- Make groups of four. Each student has six tries to get the ball into the cup. They record their scores.
- After each round, one student is the winner.
- Groups play five rounds.

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

New language: graffiti

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit

Materials: flashcards (sport), poster paper for each pair/group of students, magazines, scissors, glue, pens

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to make a poster.

Warm-up

Aim: to review sports

- Use the flashcards to review sports. Flash each flashcard quickly to the class.
- When students say the word, stick the flashcard on the board.
- 0 m

Think! SB p105 Make a poster.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate their knowledge of daily routines and times

Thinking skills: evaluating and selecting

- Read through all the stages of the poster activity with students first.
- Make sure they know what they have to do.
- Make pairs or small groups. Each pair/group chooses a different sport.
- Hand out magazines and scissors to each group and they find pictures.
- Hand out the poster paper. Remind students to do the stages of the activity in order. Tell them you have to check their work before they can go on to the next stage.
- As you go around, make sure that all the students are involved. If not, then allocate specific roles (e.g. sticking the pictures on the poster) to those who are not.

2 SB p105 Talk about sport.

Aim: to give students practice with productive and interactive speaking

- Demonstrate the activity first with the class.
- Groups take turns to display their posters to the class and to talk about the sport they chose.
- Encourage the class to ask questions so that the activity is also interactive.
- After each presentation, the groups display their posters on the wall of the classroom.

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for sport

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for sport (WB page 127).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the word.
- Students then label the pictures using words from the word bank.
 - I WB p105 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 105.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to present and practise holiday and leisure activities
- to say a chant with the class

New language: holiday, plans, visit my cousins, go hiking, keep a scrapbook, help in the garden, build a tree house, read a comic, learn to swim, go camping, take riding lessons

Materials: CD, flashcards (holidays)

Language competences: Your students will be able to identify and name holiday and leisure activities.

Warm-up

Aim: to review activities

- Mime a known sport, e.g. swimming.
- Tell students that this is something people do on their holidays.
- Write Holidays on the board in a circle and build a word map of other things students like to do on holiday.

Presentation

Aim: to present holiday vocabulary

- Show the flashcards of any holiday activities mentioned in the Warm-up, elicit the words and stick them on the board around the word map.
- Use the other flashcards to present the new holiday activities.
- Say the phrases for students to repeat.
- Do this three or four times.
- Hold up each flashcard for students to say the phrases in chorus.
- Stick the flashcards on the board around the word map.

158 p106 Listen and look. Then listen and say the words.

Aim: to practise holiday vocabulary

- Students look at the picture of the holiday posters in the Student's Book.
- Play the recording.

CD3 Track 49

106

Misty: Is this your poster. Thunder? Thunder: No. it isn't. Misty: Which is your poster, then? Thunder: Guess. Misty: Is it the one about learning to swim? Thunder: Come on. Misty. I can swim! Misty: Do you want to help your grandma in the garden? Thunder: I don't like gardening! Now say the words.

1 visit my cousins. 2 go hiking, 3 keep a scrapbook. 4 help in the garden, 5 build a tree house. 6 read a comic. 7 learn to swim. 8 go camping. 9 take riding lessons

- Students point to the holiday phrases when they hear them.
- Play the recording again. Students repeat the new phrases.
- Students practise pointing and naming in pairs.

25 | SB p106 Listen and chant.

Aim: to give students further practice saying the new words

- Use the pictures to support meaning whenever possible.
- Pre-teach Give me a GI and have students say G.
- Play the recording. Students listen and follow the chant in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- Do the chant as a class and then in two groups.
- Groups take turns to chant each verse while the others clap in time with the rhythm.

WB p106 Use the code to write the words.

Aim: to practise the new vocabulary

- Key: 2 cousins, 3 riding lessons, 4 build / house,
- 5 camping, 6 hiking, 7 read / book, 8 help / garden, 9 keep / scrapbook

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review key language from the lesson

- Mime a holiday activity.
- Students guess, using yes/no questions, e.g. Are you learning to swim?
- The student who guesses correctly comes to the front to mime the next one.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise information transfer and writing skills

- Individually, students write at least two things they do in winter, using the code from WB Activity 1.
- They swap coded messages with their partner and work out what the answers are.
- Elicit and share ideas as a class.



Alms:

- to present and practise question forms with Can (requests)
- to practise speaking skills

New language: tomorrow, morning, afternoon, evening

Recycled language: holiday and leisure activities, Grandpa, Grandma

Materials: CD, flashcards (holidays)

Language competences: Your students will be able to make requests using Can.

Warm-up

Aim: to review holiday words

- Students take turns to come to the front in pairs.
- They secretly take a flashcard and mime the holiday activity for the class to guess.
- The student who guesses correctly comes with a partner and takes the next flashcard.

Presentation

Aim: to present Can for requests

- Take a pen or pencil from a student and ask Can I use it, please?
- Prompt the student to respond, e.g. Yes, you can / Fine / OK.
- Go around the class, making requests to use/take other objects.
- Students then take turns to do the same in open pairs.

Then listen and check.

Aim: to practise the new language

- Students look at the pictures and at the sentences in the Student's Book.
- Do the first one as an example with the class.
- Check students know what to do.
- They read silently and match.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording for students to check.

CD3 Track 51

Mum: Ben, what would you like to do tomorrow? Ben: Can we visit Grandpa in the afternoon? Mum: Fine, Kate, what about you? What would you like to do? Kate: Can I build a tree house tomorrow afternoon? Mum: Bes! I can help you. Emma, what would you like to do? Emma: Can I go horse riding tomorrow morning? Mum: Well, CK. Tom, what would you like to do? Tom: Can we have pizza at Ruby's tomorrow evening? Mum: Tomorrow is Tuesday. We can go and have pizza on Wednesday. OK? Tom: Ves. Great!

 Check with the class, playing the recording again as necessary.

Key: 1 Ben, 2 Kate, 3 Emma, 4 Tom

2 SB p107 Listen and say.

Aim: to focus students on grammatical form

- Play the first question on the recording.
- Students repeat.
- Do the same for the second question.
- Supply responses, e.g. Fine. OK. Yes, you can.
- Students practise making requests and responding in pairs. They change the activities according to their preferences.

58 p107 Ask and answer.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity with different students.
- Put students into pairs.
- They take turns to ask a question, to make a request and then to respond.
- Monitor and help/prompt as appropriate.
- Check some conversations using open pairs.

1 WB p107 Look and write the words.

Aim: to practise the new language

Key: 2 go hiking, 3 take riding lessons, 4 go camping

WB p107 Put the words in order.

Aim: to practise word order of the new language

Key: 2 Can I take swimming lessons? 3 Can I keep a scrapbook? 4 Can I read a book?

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review new language from the lesson

- Invite students to come to, e.g. the door. Mime opening the door and elicit the polite request Can I open the door?
- Repeat for other classroom jobs, e.g. clean the board, turn off the light.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Students draw a picture in their notebooks similar to WB Activity 1 to illustrate one of the holiday activities.
- They write the request under the picture.

- to consolidate Can for requests
- to sing a song with the class

New language: sandy

Recycled language: holiday and leisure activities, adjectives

Materials: CD, flashcards (holidays)

Language competences: Your students will be able to join in with a song.

Your students will be able to write their own verse for a song.

Warm-up

Aim: to review holiday words

- Write the holiday phrases in jumbled word order on the board.
- Students unscramble them in pairs.
- In turn, students come to the board, stick a flashcard next to the scrambled phrase and write it correctly.

SB p108 Listen and sing.

Aim: to sing a song with the class

- Students look at the picture in the Student's Book.
- Use the picture to support / check meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students follow the song in their Student's Books.
- Check understanding of new vocabulary.
- Play the recording again, pausing after each verse for students to repeat.
- When students have learnt the song, practise it with the whole class.
- Use the karaoke version of the song for students to sing in four groups.

SB p108 Listen again and tick (/) the things that you hear in the song.

Aim: to practise comprehension skills

- Check students know what to do.
- Play the recording. Students tick the things they hear.
- They compare answers in pairs, re-reading the song if necessary.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1.3.4.6

108

W8 p108 Write words for the new verses of the song.

Aim: to practise comprehension and writing skills

Key: 2 camping, 3 swim, 4 hiking, 5 cousins, 6 tree house

2 WB p108 Match the sentences that rhyme.

Aim: to check students' awareness of rhyme

Key: 2 c. 3 a

Ending the lesson

Aim: to sing a song

- Put students into groups of six. They prepare their new songs, using the verses they wrote for WB Activity 1.
- Monitor groups to check they have sequenced the verses correctly (according to the rhyme).
- Use the karaoke version of the song as groups perform their new songs.

Extension activity

Aim: to practise memorisation skills and review vocabulary

- Start a chain, e.g. I'm going on holiday. In my bag I've got my scrapbook. Student A repeats the prompt and adds another idea, e.g. and my shorts.
- Continue the chain, choosing students at random around the class. When there are about eight objects in the bag, start another chain.



to review questions and answers

Recycled language: language from previous units

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to ask and answer questions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review questions

- Write a big ? in the middle of the board.
- Draw a circle around it. Write Who next to the circle.
- Say Can anyone ask a question beginning with Who?
- Give students time to think. Supply a question if they cannot think of one, e.g. Who can play the guitar?
- Do the same with When and How old.
- Tell students that in this lesson they are going to review questions.

T

Think! \$58 p109 Read and match. Then listen and check.

Aim: to review questions and responses

Thinking skill: matching

- Do an example first with the class.
- Check they know what to do.
- Remind them to read all the questions and answers carefully before they start.
- They do the matching task individually and then compare answers in pairs.
- Play the recording.

CD3 Track 56

- Girt Does your sister eat tomatoes?
 Boy: No. she doesn't.
- Girl: How old is your brother?
 Boy: He's thirteen.
- 3 Girt: Can you swim? Boy: Yes. I can.
- 4 Girt Have spiders got six legs? Boy: No. they've got eight.
- 5 Girl: What's her name? Bou: It's Kate.
- 6 Girl: What's his name?
- Boy: It's Oliver. 7 Girl: What does your sister like to eat? Boy: Chicken with rice.
- 8 Boy: Where are my pencils? Girl: Under the desk.
- 9 Girl: Would you like an orange? Boy: Yes, please.

- 10 Girt is there any milk in the house? Boy: No, there isn't any.
- 11 Boy: When's her birthday? Girt In November.
- 12 Girl: Whose jumper is pink? Boy: Emily's.
- Check with the class using open pairs.
- Have students mime the questions and responses to check comprehension.

Key: 1 h, 2 i, 3 f, 4 l, 5 c, 6 b, 7 k, 8 j, 9 g, 10 a, 11 e, 12 d

158 p109 Play the question game.

Aim: to give students practice with the new language

- Demonstrate the activity with the class.
- Students walk around the classroom.
- Clap your hands. Students quickly make pairs and take turns to ask and answer using a different question from Activity 1 each time.
- Clap your hands. Students move on.
- Repeat about eight times.

Think! WB p109 Read and circle.

Aim: to give students practice with the form of the new language

Thinking skill: selecting

Key: 2 c, 3 b, 4 a, 5 b, 6 a, 7 c, 8 c



WB p109 Now colour the boxes to find the hidden words.

Aim: to consolidate students' understanding of the new language

Key: Well done

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise key language from the lesson

- Write a question and answer in jumbled word order on the board.
- Students work in pairs to put them in the right order.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students further practice with contextualising language

- In pairs, students choose one of the questions and responses from SB Activity 1.
- They make up a short role play around this language, changing the words to suit their context.
- Pairs role play their situations, using the question and answer somewhere in the role play. They don't say any other words.
- Students vote for the most inventive role play.

- to present a picture story
- to review language from the unit

Recycled language: language from the story. language from previous units

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen to and read a picture story.

Your students will be able to act out a story.

Warm-up

Aim: to review the characters and the story

- Elicit from students the names of the four Super Friends.
- Ask individual students to mime their special powers.
- Elicit what students remember about the previous episode. Ask, e.g. What sport does Flash want to play? (Football.) Does she want to play table tennis? (No, she doesn't.) What happens at the end? (She starts a football team and they are very good and everyone wants her to join their team.)

SB pp110-111 Dream holidays

Aim: to present a picture story

- Use the pictures in the story to support meaning whenever possible.
- Play the recording. Students listen for who wants to learn to swim (Whisper) and who wants to help Grandma in the garden (Flash).
- Students compare their ideas in pairs. Elicit from the class.
- Play the recording again. Students listen and repeat.

Practice

Aim: to check understanding of the story

 Play the recording again. Pause after each frame to check understanding. (Students can use L1 to talk about some of their ideas.)

1 WB p110 Listen and tick (/) the box.

Aim: to review phrases from the story

CD3 Track 58

- 1 Whisper: I'd like to learn to swim.
- 2 Grandma: Can you get me the tomatoes. please?
- 3 Teacher: Happy holiday!

Key: 1 2nd picture, 2 1st picture, 3 1st picture

W8 p110 Write the words. Then read the story and check.

Aim: to check understanding of the story

Key: 2 cousins, 3 you

Think! WB p110 Match the pictures with the sentences.

Aim: to check comprehension of key phrases Thinking skill: matching

Key: 2 Here you are. 3 It looks great.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise the story

- Put students into groups of eight.
- Students take a role of one of the characters.
- Play the recording. Students repeat in role.
- Students practise the role play in their groups.
- Volunteer groups role play the story for the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to activate students' imaginations

- In pairs, students make up a short role play to illustrate the phrases from WB Activity 3. They add their own ideas in place of bananas/great.
- Go around the groups and help / make suggestions.
- Pairs role play their situations for the class. The only words they say are Can you get me the ..., please? Here you are. It looks ...
- The other students have to guess what the situation is.

- to talk about the meaning of the story
- to practise saying the letter sound s. pronounced z
- to review language from the story and the unit

Thinking skills: interpreting the values in a story

Recycled language: language from the story, language from previous units

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to interpret deeper meaning from a story.

Phonics focus: Your students will be able to read and say the letter sounds s/z and identify some words where the letter s is pronounced /z/.

Value: helping people

Warm-up

Aim: to review the story

- Ask questions about the story, e.g. Who wants to build a tree house? (Thunder.) Who wants to learn to swim? (Whisper.)
- Elicit from students if they would like to do any of these things.

SB p111 Read and write who says ...

Aim: to focus students on the content of the story

- Play the recording of the story again. Students follow it in their Student's Books.
- Make sure students know what to do.
- They read the sentences and write who says them.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 1 Flash, 2 Whisper, 3 Thunder, 4 Misty

58 p111 Find who says ...

Aim: to present the sound z in words containing the letter s

 Write visit and cousin on the board, using a red pen for the s. Students listen while you say the words and tell you the sound (zzz as in a bee buzzing).

Note: Cousin is a special word, pronounced /knz*n/.

- Show students how the mouth and tongue are the same for both sounds, but for the s letter sound they don't use their voice. Students put their fingers on their throat and feel the vibration for the letter sound z.
- Students repeat I'd like to visit my cousins after you and find the speech bubble in the story (frame 3).

Key: Misty

58 p111 Listen and say.

Aim: to practise and identify the letter sound z in words with the letters z and s

Play the recording. Students look, read and repeat.

CD3 Track 59

z - z - z

The Zoo Keeper gives the lizards bananas for dinner. The Zoo Keeper gives the lizards bananas for dinner!

- Students point out where the letter z is pronounced /z/ and where the letter s is pronounced /z/.
- Repeat the sentence as a class without the recording. Say it loudly, slowly, quickly, whisper it, etc.
- Students take turns to repeat in pairs.

Values | W8 p111 Look and circle.

Aim: to focus students on the value of helping people Key: Picture 2

2 or s.

Aim: to practise contrasting the two sounds z and s

CD3 Track 60 Nose, house, zebra, swm. lesson, lizard, tennis, tomatoes

B St IWB p111 Listen, say and check your answers.

CD3 Track 61

Z nose, zebra, lizard, tomatoes \$ house, swim, lesson, tennis

Key: See CD script above.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review and write words with the sounds z and s

- Dictate the sound sentence while students write. They check in the Student's Book.
- In plurals the final s is often pronounced /z/: lemons, eggs, toys, jeans. Compare with plurals pronounced /s/: clocks, parrots, parks, shops. Dictate the words above in random order while students write them in two columns headed z and s.

Extension activity

Aim: to discuss the value of helping people

- Focus on what happens in the story and how Flash helps her grandma.
- Elicit why this value is important and examples of when students help people.

Note: Some of this discussion may need to take place in L1.

to practise reading skills

Skills:

reading for specific information

Recycled language: language from this and previous units

Materials: flashcards (holidays)

Language competences: Your students will be able to read for specific information.

Warm-up

Aim: to review holiday phrases

- Use the flashcards to review holiday words.
- Show each one quickly to the class and they guess/ say the word and mime the activity.

IsB p112 Look and read. Put a tick (*) or a cross (*) in the box.

Aim: to practise reading for specific information 🕅

- Students look at the pictures and read the sentences.
- Check they know what to do.
- Students do the task individually.
- They compare answers in pairs.
- Check with the class. Elicit correct sentences for answers with a cross.

Key: 1 X, 2 V, 3 X, 4 V, 5 X, 6 X

WB p112-113 Look and read. Write the answers

Aim: to practise reading for specific information and following instructions

Key: 2 cap. 3 tree house. 4 garden. 5 flower. 6 kitchen, 7 Four

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review language

- Give students 30 seconds to study the picture in WB Activity 1. Then they close their Workbooks.
- Elicit what they can remember about the picture.

Extension activity

Aim: to give students writing practice

- Students write about their favourite holiday activity in their notebooks and draw a picture.
- In their texts, they say why they like the holiday activity and when and where they do it. e.g. summer, winter, at the beach. in the sea.

- to practise listening and speaking skills
 Skills:
- listening for specific information
- speaking

Recycled language: language from this and previous units

Materials: CD, Unit 9 stickers

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen for specific information.

Your students will be able to answer questions about a picture.

Warm-up

Aim: to review vocabulary

- Make statements about things in the room some true, and some false, e.g. This is a big, green and white bag. (It's green and yellow.)
- Students stand up. They turn around for true statements and stand still for false ones.
- Students who react wrongly are out.
- Continue until there is a small group of winners.

USB p113 Listen and stick.

Aim: to practise listening skills

Students prepare their stickers.

Note: In order to carry out this activity, students will first need to cut out their stickers with the backs attached.

- Check students know what to do.
- Play the recording. They listen and place the stickers.

CD3 Track 62

Put the horse between the two small trees. Put the frog in front of the boy with the blue cap. Put the dog under the tree house. Put the cat on the tree house.

- Students compare their answers in pairs.
- Play the recording again and check with the class.

Key: horse between two small trees, frog in front of the boy with the blue cap, dog under the tree house, cat on the tree house

ISB p113 Look, think and answer the questions.

Aim: to give students practice with reading and answering questions

- Check students know what to do.
- They read the questions silently and think about the answers.
- In pairs, they take turns to read a question and to answer it.
- Check using open pairs.
- Key: 1 There are six children in the picture. 2 The boy in the black T-shirt is writing. 3 The man is wearing a T-shirt, trousers and a hat. 4 The boy's cap is blue.
 - 5 The boys in red T-shirts are making a tree house.

Ending the lesson

Aim: to practise giving and following instructions

- Students do the sticker activity in pairs. Student A secretly puts his/her stickers anywhere on the SB Activity 1 picture.
- Student A then gives instructions for Student B to follow.
- They check and change roles.

Extension activity

Aim: to review vocabulary

- Write, e.g. Transport in the centre of the board. Give pairs one minute to write as many transport words as they can remember.
- They swap word maps with another pair.
- Pairs check in their Picture dictionaries.
- Repeat with another word family.

 to integrate other areas of the curriculum through English: Literature

New language: fairy tale, story book, comic, magazine, characters, king, queen, dragon, witch, names of fairy tales

Recycled language: language from this and previous units

Materials: CD

Language competences: Your students will be able to use known language to talk about Literature in English.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce fairy tales

- Write the words Cinderella and Sleeping Beauty on the board.
- Elicit from students what these are (fairy tales).
- Give the names in L1 if students do not recognise them.
- If these stories are not ones familiar in the students' culture, give the names of fairy tales they know.
- Elicit other fairy tales they like.

SB p114 Read and tick (/).

Aim: to activate students' knowledge of the world

- Students look at the picture and at the words in the Student's Book.
- They answer individually and then compare in pairs.
- Compare answers as a class.
- Elicit comics and magazines that they read.

\$8 p114 Listen, read and answer the questions.

Aim: to enable students to extend their knowledge of the topic

- Make sure students know what to do.
- Play the recording. Students listen and read.
- Read the text aloud around the class, checking comprehension.
- Don't worry about students' pronunciation of the story names.
- Students answer and discuss the questions in pairs.
- Discuss and share ideas as a class.



Aim: to practise the new language

Key: 2 magazine, 3 comic



WB p114 Read about fairy tales again and write the words in the correct carriages.

Aim: to enable students to consolidate what they have learnt

Key: The Brothers Grimm: Rapunzel. Hansel and Gretel Fairy tales are about: queens, witches, animals Walt Disney films: Pinocchio, The Little Mermaid

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've learnt about:
- Elicit from students what they learnt today, e.g. fairy tales, what they're about and some people who wrote them.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to further apply what they have learnt

- Put students into groups.
- They each tell the other students which their favourite fairy tale is.
- Groups choose one of the four stories.
- They make a poster about the fairy tale.
- Groups present their posters to the class.

- to extend the focus on Literature through
- English to enable students to complete a project
- in the second second
- New language: troll, bridge, palace, cross

Recycled language: fairy tales, language from this and previous units

Materials: props and dressing up clothes for acting out fairy tales (optional)

Language competences: Your students will be able to talk about Literature in English.

Your students will be able to complete a project.

Warm-up

Aim: to review fairy tales

- Say some of the fairy tales from the previous lesson.
- Students name some of the characters or put their hands up if they like the story.

Think! | SB p115 Read and match.

Aim: to extend students' understanding of fairy tales and their characters

Thinking skill: matching text with visual information

- Read the introduction with the class and check they know what to do.
- Students do the matching task individually and then check in pairs.
- Check with the class, eliciting the meaning of the new vocabulary.
- Discuss with students what other bad and good characters they know in fairy tales.

Key: 1 c. 2 a. 3 b

Project SB p115 Choose your favourite fairy tale and act it out.

Aim: to enable students to follow instructions and collaborate

- Talk about the project with students and make sure they know what to do.
- Brainstorm fairy tales with the class.
- Groups of six choose one fairy tale.
- Students make notes about the story in their groups.
- They allocate roles.
- Monitor groups and help/support as necessary.
- If time, students can make paper crowns and simple costumes.
- Groups act out their role plays to the class.

1 WB p115 Match the stories with their characters.

Aim: to enable students to apply what they have learnt Key: 2 d, 3 a, 4 c

3 IWE p115 Draw a picture of your favourite fairy tale and write about it.

Aim: to stimulate students' creativity

Ending the lesson

Aim: to review what students have learnt in the lesson

- Write the following prompt on the board: Today I've ...
- Elicit from students what they learnt about today.
 e.g. learnt about different characters in fairy tales and acted out a fairy tale with my friends.
- Write it on the board. Students copy it into their notebooks.

Extension activity

Aim: to develop writing and reflective skills

- Talk through with the class what they did for the project, e.g. First you ... Then you ...
- Individually, students make notes on what they did and the sequence they did it in.
- Students then each write a report of what they did for the project, what the outcome was and what they learnt.
- Monitor and help as necessary.



 to stimulate the students' imagination through listening and acting out

New language: cow, run away

Recycled language: language from the unit and from previous units

Materials: CD, paper, scissors, coloured pens, string, clean twigs, pencils

Language competences: Your students will be able to listen and do actions to demonstrate meaning.

Your students will be able to follow auditory, written and visual instructions.

Warm-up

Aim: to review instructions and mime

 Give students some simple instructions to mime, e.g. You're on holiday. You're learning to ride a horse. Oh, the horse is very big. Can you get on it?
 Yes! Well done!

USB p116 Listen and act out with your teacher. Then listen again and number the pictures.

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions and in sequencing information

- Students look at the pictures in their Student's Books.
- Play the recording and mime the actions.

CD3 Track 64

- You are skeeping in your tent.
- 2 You wake up.
- 3 Listen.
- 4 Open the tent.
- 5 There's a cow outside.
- 6 Clap your hands and shout, 'Bool'
- 7 The cow runs away.
- 8 Stand up and say. 'I'm a Super Friend!'
- Mime the actions without the recording and checking understanding through mime.
- Play the recording again and mime the actions. Students mime the actions with you.
- Students listen again and sequence the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check with the class.

Key: 7, 4, 1, 6, 8, 2, 5, 3

SB p116 Read and number the sentences from the story.

Aim: to give students practice in reading for detail

- Read the eight instructions aloud.
- Students individually match the instructions with the pictures.
- They compare their answers in pairs.
- Check by asking one student to read an instruction aloud, another to mime the action and another to say the number.

Key: 7, 1, 2, 5, 4, 8, 6, 3

3) SB p116 Listen to your friend and act out.

Aim: to give students practice in giving and following instructions

- Demonstrate the activity by giving the instructions in random order for the class to follow.
- Students do the activity in pairs.
- Invite more confident students to role play their instructions in front of the class.

WB p116 Make a holiday mobile.

Aim: to enable students to follow a set of visual and written instructions to make a mobile

Ending the lesson

Aim: to give students practice in following instructions

 Play a game of 'Simon says', using the instructions from SB page 116 Activity 2. When you say Simon says before the instruction, students mime it. When you do not say Simon says, students do not mime it.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to compare and discuss their mobiles

- Put students into groups of four.
- They take turns to describe and compare their mobiles and talk about the pictures they chose.

- to review language from the unit
- to encourage students to reflect on their learning

Recycled language: vocabulary and grammar from the unit and from previous units

Materials: flashcards (holidays)

Language competences: Your students will be able to use language from the unit to complete a quiz.

Warm-up

Aim: to review holiday phrases

- Use the flashcards to review holiday activities.
- Flash each flashcard quickly to the class.
- When students say the phrase, stick the flashcard on the board.

SB p117 Quiz time

Aim: to enable students to review language from the unit by doing a quiz

- Students do the quiz in pairs. The first time they do it without looking back through the unit.
- Pairs check their work with other pairs.
- Students then look back to check answers they did not know.
- Check answers with the class.

Key: 1 b, 2 a, 3 a, 4 c, 5 c, 6 b, 7 b, 8 c

Picture dictionary

Aim: to review vocabulary for holidays

- Students look at the Picture dictionary page for holidays (WB page 128).
- In pairs, they take turns to point to one of the pictures and say the phrase.
- Students then label the pictures, using words from the word bank.



I WB p117 Draw and write examples of what you know.

Aim: to enable students to demonstrate what they have learnt

Ending the lesson

Aim: to enable students to express their preferences

- Ask students what their favourite song, chant or game is from the unit.
- Do the song, chant or game again with the class.

Extension activity

Aim: to enable students to discuss and share what they have learnt

- Put students into groups of four.
- Each student opens their Workbook at page 117.
- Students take turns to read aloud what they have written for number 2 and to talk about their pictures.
- Encourage students to discuss and compare what they have written and drawn.
- Students do the same for numbers 3 and 4.

- to introduce the concept of Halloween
- to do a rhyme and play games around the topic of Halloween
- to design Halloween costumes

New language: Halloween, witch, skeleton, vampire, trick, treat

Recycled language: monster, grammar and vocabulary from the Student's Book

Materials: Halloween cut-outs SB page 119

Language competences: Your students will be able to play games on the topic of Halloween.

Your students will be able to say a rhyme on the topic of Halloween.

Your students will be able to make Halloween costumes.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of Halloween

- Introduce the topic of Halloween to the class.
- Elicit what they know about it and if they celebrate it.
- Brainstorm typical Halloween games/activities on to the board. Some examples of games and activities are: dressing up in scary costumes; bobbing for apples (trying to grab a floating apple with your teeth); hollowing out a pumpkin, carving a scary face and putting a candle inside; playing trick or treat (going around people's houses, knocking on the door and saying *Trick ar treat*. If people give you a treat, e.g. a biscuit, you go away. If they don't, you play a trick on them).

Introducing the Halloween characters

Aim: to enable students to learn about Halloween characters

- Use the pictures in the cut-outs to explain the concept of children dressing up.
- Explain the tradition of 'Trick or treat'.

🕑 A rhyme

Aim: to teach a rhyme to students

Say the following rhyme:

We're dressing up for Halloween. We're playing trick or treat. Skeleton, monster, witch and vampire. Give us something sweet to eat.

- The first time students listen and point.
- Teach the rhyme to the class to do in groups.

A guessing game

Aim: to enable students to play an information exchange activity using the cut-outs

- Students prepare the cut-outs to make cards.
- They play with these first, jumbling them up and then
 putting them together again to make the different
 characters, or new combinations of their own. When
 they complete a character, they describe it to a partner:
 It's a witch. It's a monster skeleton!
- Students can also describe what their character looks like and is wearing: She's wearing a black hat. She's got black hair and a big nose. She's wearing a blue jumper and a green skirt. She's wearing stripy tights. She's wearing blue boots.
- Students then describe their new character to their partner in an information gap activity. One describes the different parts of their character and their partner listens, without looking, and chooses the correct parts to complete the character.

Matching cards

Aim: to enable students to play a matching game with their cards

- Students work in pairs.
- They spread out all the cards face down on the table in front of them.
- Students take turns to pick up one card and identify the character it comes from and say something about it: It's the witch. She's wearing a black hat.
- Students keep the card and then have to take turns to turn over and find the other parts of the same character.
- The first student to find their complete character describes it and is the winner.

A guessing game

Aim: to enable students to play a guessing game

- Students play the game in pairs.
- Students choose one of the characters to pretend to be.
- Their partner has to guess who they are by asking yes or no questions, e.g. Have you got black hair? Are you wearing black shoes?
- The student who guesses correctly with the fewest questions is the winner.

Extension activity

Aim: to encourage student creativity

- Students can design their own Halloween costumes or bring real costumes to class and dress up for the lesson.
- Arrange a 'trick or treat' exchange visit to other classes in the school, if appropriate.

T118

- to introduce the concept of Christmas
- to do a rhyme and play games around the topic of Christmas
- to make a Christmas book

New language: Christmas, Santa, reindeer, present, stocking, sleigh

Recycled language: times, routines, grammar and vocabulary from the Student's Book

Materials: Christmas cut-outs SB page 121. scissors

Language competences: Your students will be able to play games on the topic of Christmas. Your students will be able to say rhymes on the topic of Christmas.

Your students will be able to make a Christmas book.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of Christmas

- Introduce the topic of Christmas to the class.
- Elicit what they know about it and if they celebrate it.
- Brainstorm typical Christmas activities and food on to the board.
- Some examples of activities are: giving and receiving presents; hanging out stockings or pillow cases for Father Christmas to fill with presents; putting up a tree in the house and decorating it with coloured lights and decorations.
- Some examples of food are: Christmas cake, turkey and stuffing. Christmas pudding and mince pies (these are sweet).

A rhyme

Aim: to enable students to say a rhyme about Christmas

- Show the cut-out picture of Santa on his sleigh to introduce the theme of Santa and his sleigh.
- Pre-teach Santa, sleigh, presents and introduce the tradition of Santa travelling by sleigh to deliver presents to children round the world.
- Say the following rhyme:

Here comes Santa, Santa on his sleigh, Here comes Santa, what a busy day! Oh, thank you, Santa, for all that you do. Happy Christmas Santa, we love you!

- Students listen and say.
- Then tell them they are going to find out about Santa's busy day.

🕗 Santa's day

Aim: to enable students to imagine what Santa's day is like and to compare their days with his

- Ask students to imagine what Santa's Christmas Day is like: What time does he get up? What time does he go to bed? Accept ideas and write them on the board.
- Students cut up the cut-outs and put them in order. They compare the order with their friends.
- Read the sentences in the cut-outs and check language as necessary.
- Students then cut these up and match them with the pictures.
- Check by asking pupils to read out the sentences about Santa's day in order.
- Students then compare their own daily routine, either on a normal day, or on Christmas Day, with Santa's.
- Students then describe the differences, e.g. I get up early in the morning, but Santa gets up at seven o'clock in the evening. I take presents out of my stocking. Santa puts presents in my stocking.

Key: f, a. e, d, c. b

Make a Christmas book

Aim: to enable students to make a Christmas book

- Students make a mini Christmas book, using an A4 piece of paper.
- Show them how to fold the piece of paper into three pieces, concertina style. These folds make the pages of the book. Number them 1 to 6.
- Students then stick the pictures and sentences from the cut-outs onto the folded paper in order to make a mini Christmas book.
- They take this back to show their families.

Extension activity

Aim: to stimulate students to use their imaginations

 Students think of unusual routines for Santa, e.g. What does he do on holiday?

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

Aims:

- to introduce the concept of Easter
- to do a rhyme and play games around the topic of Easter

New language: Easter, bunny, egg hunt

Recycled language: rooms in a house, furniture, colours, grammar and vocabulary from the Student's Book

Materials: Easter cut-outs SB page 123, scissors

Language competences: Your students will be able to play games on the topic of Easter.

Your students will be able to say rhymes on the topic of Easter.

Your students will be able to take part in an Easter egg hunt.

Warm-up

Aim: to introduce the topic of Easter

- Introduce the topic of Easter to the class.
- Elicit what they know about it and if they celebrate it.
- Brainstorm typical Easter activities on the board.
- Some examples of activities are: making and giving Easter cards: giving Easter eggs (made of chocolate); an Easter egg hunt (e.g. small chocolate eggs hidden in a garden).

To review rooms in a house and furniture

Aim: to introduce the concept of hiding Easter eggs

- Use the pictures in the cut-outs to review vocabulary and to explain the concept of hiding Easter eggs.
- Explain the tradition of Easter egg hunts.

🔁 A rhyme

Alm: to enable students to join in with a rhyme

Say the following rhyme:

Come to my house for Easter. And have some fun with me. We're going on an egg hunt, How many eggs can you see? There's one in the bedroom, It's under the chair. There's one in the bathroom,

There are eggs everywhere!

- The first time students listen and point.
- Teach the rhyme to the class. Students then do the rhyme in groups.

🔁 An egg hunt

Aim: to enable students to play a game

- Students cut out the eggs at the bottom of the cut-out page to play their own egg hunt game.
- They work in pairs. They both hide their eggs around the house by positioning them in, on, under or next to the furniture in the house.
- Students then take turns to try to find their partner's eggs by asking questions, without looking at their partner's house, e.g. Is there an egg in the bedroom? (Yes.) Is it under the bed? (Yes.) When they guess correctly, their partner has to give them the egg. If they guess incorrectly and the answer is No, it is then their partner's turn to ask.
- The first student to find all their partner's eggs is the winner.

Note: You can make this game more difficult by getting students to find the individual eggs by their colour as well: Is the red egg in the bedroom? (No.)

Spot the difference

Aim: to develop students' observational skills

 Students play this game in pairs. They position the eggs in their house as for the egg hunt game, but they then compare their two pictures and note the differences: (Name)'s blue egg is on the bed, but my blue egg is under the bed. (Name)'s red egg is in the bathroom, but mine is in the kitchen.

Extension activity

Aim: to bring the activities to life for students

- a) A real egg hunt
 - Bring small chocolate eggs to class to hide.
- b) Activity egg hunt
 - Instead of chocolate eggs, draw egg shapes on pieces of paper and write instructions on them.
 - Students hunt to find the pieces of paper, and then have to read and follow the instruction written on it.

Garan Holcombe



reacher's Resource Book 2



Introduction		124
Teache	r's notes and worksheets	
Back to	school	126
Unit 1	My day	130
Unit 2	The zoo	135
Unit 3	Where we live	140
Unit 4	The market	145
Unit 5	My bedroom	150
Unit 6	People	155
Unit 7	Off we go!	160
Unit 8	Sports club	165
Unit 9	Holiday plans	170
Progress	tests Back to school	175
Progress tests Unit 1		177
Progress	tests Unit 2	179
Progress	tests Unit 3	181
Progress	tests Unit 4	183
Progress tests Unit 5		185
Progress	Progress tests Unit 6	
Progress	tests Unit 7	189
Progress	tests Unit 8	191
Progress	tests Unit 9	193
Progre	ss test teacher's notes, tapescripts and answer keys	195

Introduction

The Teacher's Resource Book contains photocopiable worksheets which provide extra language practice for those teachers and students following Super Minds Level 2. In addition, each of the ten Student's Book units is provided with two progress tests, one based on listening and one on reading and writing, covering the same content as the photocopiable worksheets.

What do the photocopiable worksheets provide?

The photocopiable worksheets have been carefully designed to reinforce and provide extra practice of the work done in class. They focus on the language introduced in each unit of Level 2 of the course and do not introduce or use any additional or unfamiliar language.

Each worksheet has accompanying teacher's notes with suggestions for exploitation in the classroom, together with suggested Optional follow-up activities.

There are four worksheets for each main unit in Level 2:

Worksheet 1: This worksheet focuses on the key vocabulary presented on the opening page of each unit in the Student's Book. The vocabulary area is identified at the foot of the worksheet and items are listed in detail in the teacher's notes.

Worksheet 2: This worksheet focuses on the language presented and practised in the first grammar lesson of each unit (on the second page of each unit in the Student's Book). The target language is detailed in the teacher's notes.

Worksheet 3: This worksheet focuses on the language presented and practised in the second grammar lesson of each unit (on the fourth page of each unit in the Student's Book). Once again, the target language is detailed in the teacher's notes.

Worksheet 4: This worksheet is based around the CLIL focus of each unit (covered on pages seven and eight in each unit of the Student's Book).

In addition, there are three worksheets provided for use with the Back to school unit.

How can the worksheets be used?

The worksheets can be used in a number of ways:

The first three worksheets in each unit have been designed so that students can either work on them individually or as part of pair or class activities. For individual work, the worksheets could be used by those students who finish class activities more quickly than others. Alternatively, they can be set for homework. For pair or class activities, the worksheets can be used when additional practice is necessary, for revision or as an alternative activity when there is a gap or change in your usual lesson routine. Suggestions on how to use the worksheets in different ways are included in the occompanying teacher's notes.

 The fourth worksheet in each unit (the CLIL worksheet) is intended to be used communicatively, for pair, small group or class activities. These worksheets include games and craft activities.
 Suggestions on how to use these worksheets are also included in the accompanying teacher's notes.

What activity types do the worksheets provide?

The worksheets provide a range of games and puzzles and, at this level, activities which require the students to read and write words, phrases, sentences and questions.

All activities on the worksheets apart from the progress tests are designed to be used without an audio accompaniment.

The teacher's notes and Optional follow-up activities contain references to some well-known traditional games and activities. These include:

Simon says! This game requires students to follow instructions. Call out instructions for students to follow. If you say an instruction with Simon says at the beginning of it, e.g. Simon says, stand up, students should do as you say. Without the instruction Simon says at the beginning, e.g. Stand up, students should do nothing. If they follow an instruction wrongly, they are 'out' and have to sit down. They can also play this game in small groups.

Bingo This game reviews lexis. Students choose three or four words or pictures from a vocabulary group or groups, e.g. animals and colours. They write or draw the items. Call out words, or descriptions of the pictures, e.g. a blue parrot. When students hear you call out something that they have chosen, they cross it out. The first one to cross out all the words or pictures they have chosen calls out Bingo!

I-Spy This is an alphabet game, useful for reviewing vocabulary. Say a sentence, e.g. I spy with my little eye something beginning with R. Students take it in turns to look around and guess what you are thinking of, e.g. a ruler. The first student to guess the word correctly has the next turn. Students can play this game in pairs or small groups.

Kim's game This is a memory game, useful for reviewing vocabulary. Put several different objects on a desk. Ask students to name them. Students then cover their eyes while you remove one or more of the objects. They then have to say what is missing. Students can also play this game in pairs or small groups. Time race This game helps students to relate what they hear to the written word. It can be played with any lexical set. Write on the board some times that students know, e.g. three o'clock. Put students into two teams and ask both teams to line up on either side of the board. Give the first student in each team a board pen. Say one of the times. The two students race to find and circle it. The first player to circle the correct time wins a point for their team. The game continues with the next pair of students.

What's the time, Mr Wolf? This stirring activity practises numbers and needs a lot of space. Choose a student to be the wolf. You are the reporter. Get the rest of the students to stand at one end of the room or playground: the wolf stands with his or her back to them at the other end. The runners all ask. What's the time, Mr Wolf? The wolf says the time, e.g. It's seven o'clock. The runners take seven steps towards the wolf. You say what the wolf does at that time, e.g. At seven a'clock, the wolf gets up. The game continues. When you say an eating action, e.g. At 12 o'clock, the wolf has lunch, the wolf turns and runs after the other students until one of them is caught. That student then becomes the wolf and the game starts again.

Pictionary This game reviews vocabulary. Ask a volunteer to begin drawing, e.g. an animal, on the board, slowly. line by line. The first student to guess what he/she is drawing takes the next turn. Students can also play this in small groups. The object of the game is to be the first to guess what is being drawn before the drawing is complete.

House This game revises vocabulary and practises spelling. It is also sometimes known as Hangman. Write on the board dashes (_____), one for each of the letters of a word you are thinking of. You can give the students a clue if you think they need it. Students take it in turns to guess what letters are in the word. If they guess a letter correctly, write the letter in the word. If the guess is incorrect, start to draw a house. This house should be drawn line by line for each incorrect guess. It has four straight lines for the walls, two diagonal lines for the roof and three lines for the door. If the house is complete before all the letters of the word have been guessed, you win. Students can play the game in small groups.

Musical chairs This is a stirring game to practise sentences. Arrange one chair for each student in two rows, back to back. Play some music. Students walk/ dance around the chairs. Take one chair away, then stop the music. Students run to sit on a chair. The one who is left standing has to say a sentence with the language you are practising, e.g. I like playing football. If they make a correct sentence, they can continue with the game. If they make a mistake, they are out. Each time a student is out, remove one more chair while the music is playing, so there is always one student who must make a sentence when the music stops.

Musical statues This game practises 'action' vocabulary and the present continuous. Blindfold a volunteer and write an action on the board, e.g. You're playing tennis. Students act out the action while you play some music. Stop the music. Students freeze. Clean the board and remove the blindfold. The volunteer must guess what the class are doing. If any students move during the process, they are out. The game continues with a new volunteer and a new action until only one person is left.

Spinners As an alternative to using dice in board games, students can make and use a spinner. The spinner is made by drawing a circle and then dividing it into six equal segments by drawing lines. Students should then cut off the 'arc' of each segment on the outside of the circle so that there is a straight edge going across the widest part of each segment. They then write the numbers one to six, one in each segment. Finally, a hole is made in the centre of the circle and a pencil pushed through. Students can then spin the pencil with their thumb and first two fingers. The number the spinner rests on each time is used to play the game.

Using the end-of-unit progress tests

There are two progress tests for each of the ten units in the Level 2 Student's Book.

You might choose to do one of the two progress tests once students have completed the first half of each unit of the Student's Book and then save the other progress test until students have completed the entire unit. Alternatively, you might choose to do one of the two progress tests at the end of each unit and then save the other progress test until the end of term. This staged approach will help you to see what students have learnt and understood in the short term and what they can remember in the long term. It will also give students an opportunity to revise / ask for help between tests in order to improve their mark.

Introductory notes for the tests, teacher's notes, tapescripts and keys can be found at the back of the book from page 75 anwards.



Worksheet 1: The classroom

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises classroom vocabulary: door, window, bookcase, wall, board, clock, cupboard, chair, floor and revises classroom objects. It also raises awareness of vowels and consonants.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They look at the picture of the classroom and use it to complete the missing vowels from the classroom words 2–9.
- Students then look at the classroom objects (a-f) on the desks in the classroom and write the words using the words in the bax to help them.
- After checking, ask students to take turns to spell out the words on the worksheet for a partner to either say or write down the word they are spelling.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 clock, 3 wall, 4 board, 5 cupboard, 6 door, 7 bookcase, 8 chair, 9 floor; Activity 2: b pen, c pencil, d ruler, e notebook, f pencil case

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play I-Spy, by saying, e.g. I spy with my little eye something beginning with B. (book). Students take it in turns to look around the classroom and guess the word. Students play the game in groups.

Worksheet 2: There 's / are ...

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises There's a/an ... and There are some ...
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They
 read the sentences carefully and complete them
 with the missing word.
- Students then read the sentences again and draw the missing objects on each desk.
- Ask students to read their sentences and show their pictures to another student or pair. Encourage them to try to correct their own work.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 are, 3 an, 4 a, 5 some, 6 rulers; Activity 2: Drawings of 2 some books, 3 an apple, 4 a pencil case, 5 some pencils

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play Kim's Game. Put several different classroom objects an a desk. Ask students to gather round the desk and take it in turns to tell you what they can see, e.g. There's a pencil case / There are some rubbers. Students can also count items, e.g. There are four notebooks. Ask students to turn round while you remove one or more things from the desk. Elicit what's missing, e.g. a book / some pencils. Repeat. Then students play the game in groups.

Worksheet 3: Imperatives

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises affirmative and negative imperatives.
- Encourage students to look at the pictures in the story and elicit what is happening (the boy is training his dog). Do this in L1 if necessary.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They
 complete the story by copying the imperatives into
 the correct speech bubble.
- Ask students to compare their work and act out the story in pairs.
- KEY: 2 Don't sit down. Eat! 3 Don't eat. Play! 4 Don't stand up. Sit down! 5 Don't play. Sit down! 6 Don't close your book. Open it!

Optional follow-up activity: Students create their own imperatives story to act out in pairs. Brainstorm the imperatives students know and write them on the board to get students started. Students then plan their story. Less confident students can act out their story through mime. More confident students can say the imperatives in their story. Help with new language as necessary.



Worksheet 1: The classroom



What can you see in the classroom? Complete the words.





PHOTOCOPIABLE



Worksheet 3: Imperatives

Look, read and write the sentences in the story.

Don't play. Sit down! Don't stand up. Sit down! Don't sit down. Stand up! Don't eat. Play! Don't close your book. Open it! Don't sit down. Eat!



Act out the story. 2

Grammar 2: Imperatives

T129

1 My day

Worksheet 1: My day

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises vocabulary: get up, get dressed, have breakfast, brush your teeth, go to school, have lunch, play in the park, have dinner, go to bed.
- Students label the pictures with the words in the boxes.
- Students then work in pairs. Student A mimes a phrase and Student B guesses. Students swap roles.
- KEY: 2 get dressed, 3 have breakfast. 4 brush your teeth, 5 go to school, 6 have lunch. 7 play in the park, 8 have dinner, 9 go to bed

Optional follow-up activity: Prepare students to write about their routine during one day. Brainstorm activities and write them on the board. Tell students to draw pictures if they can't write about some things they do, e.g. housework.

Worksheet 2: Telling the time

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises questions and answers about the time.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They use the words on the clock to complete the questions and answers.
- Students then think of two more time questions.
 They write true answers. Then students stand up and mingle, asking and answering their questions.
- Students say Snap! when another student has the same answer as their own.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 It's four o'clock. 3 When do you go to bed? 4 At nine o'clock: Activity 2: (Possible questions and answers: 1 What time do you go to school? At eight o'clock. 2 When do you have dinner? At six o'clock.)

Optional follow-up activity: Play Time race. Write the 'o'clock' times that students know on the board. Put students in two teams and ask both teams to line up on either side of the board. Give the first student in each team a board pen. Say one of the times. e.g. *ten o'clock*. The two students race to find and circle it. The first player to circle the correct time wins a point. Play continues with the next pair of students.

This game can also be played with numbers 1-20.

Worksheet 3: Paula's day

Using the worksheet

130

- This worksheet practises present simple, 3rd person.
- Students look at the pictures and read. They
 complete the text, using the verbs they know.

- Students read the text again and draw the correct times on the clocks.
- Ask students to work in pairs. Student A says a time, e.g. II o'clock. Student B says what Paula does, e.g. Paula plays in the park with her friends. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 has/eats. 3 brushes, 4 plays, 5 has/ eats. 6 watches. 7 goes: Activity 2: 2 10 o'clock, 3 11 o'clock, 4 6 o'clock, 5 7 o'clock, 6 8 o'clock

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play What's the time. Mr Wolf? Choose a student to be the wolf. You are the reporter. The other students are the runners. The wolf stands on one side of the room and the runners stand on the other. You stand in the middle. The runners say What's the time, Mr Wolf? The wolf says the time, e.g. It's seven o'clock. The runners take seven steps towards the wolf. You say what the wolf does at that time, e.g. The wolf gets up. When you say an eating action, e.g. The wolf has breakfast/ lunch/dinner, the wolf runs after the other students until one is caught. Students swap roles.

Worksheet 4: Cities

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises finding out and asking about cities.
- Students work in four groups. Ask each group to find out the answers to the questions about one of the cities in the box. Students share what they already know, use the Internet, look at an encyclopaedia and ask you for information. Help with new language. Then students find or draw a picture of the city.
- Students work with a member of a different group. They take it in turns to ask and write the answers to the questions in 2a.

	Mexico City	Cairo	London	Beijing
Where?	Mexico	Egypt	United Kingdom	China
Population?	20 million	15 million	13 million	12 million
Famous building?	Palace of Fine Arts	Coptic Museum	Big Ben	Forbidden City
River?	No	Nile	Thames	Yongding

KEY: Activity 2a):

Optional follow-up activity: Students work in their original groups and make a short poster presentation.



Look and write the words.

brush play go go have have have get get

to school lunch dressed in the park dinner up your teeth to bed breakfast



1 _____get up















8







Vocabulary: Daily routines

T131
Worksheet 2: Telling the time Use the words on the clock to make the

questions and answers.





Grammar 1: Telling the time)



Read and complete.



It's Saturday. Paula 1 ______ gets ____ up at nine o'clock. She 2 ______ breakfast at ten o'clock and 3 ______ her teeth. Paula 4 ______ in the park with her friends at eleven o'clock. Paula 5 ______ dinner with her family at six o'clock. She 6 ______ TV with her brother at seven o'clock and she 7 ______ to bed at eight o'clock.

Read again and draw the time on the clocks.

Grammar 2: Present simple, 3rd person

Find out about your city.	
Tick the correct answer.	
Where is your city?	
In Egypt. In China. In Mexico. In the United Kingdom.	
What is the population of your city?	
The population is 20 million. The population is The population is 12 million. The population is 12 million.	
Are there any famous buildings in your city?	
Yes, there are. The Palace of Fine Arts. Yes, there are. The Forbidden City. Yes, there of Yes, there are. The Coptic Museum.	ıre.
Is there a river in your city?	
Yes, there is. The Nile. Yes, there is. The Yongo Yes, there is. The Thames. No, there isn't.	ing
Draw or find a picture of your city.	

Worksheet 1: Animals

Using the worksheet

 This worksheet practises animals: zebra, monkey, parrot, tiger, crocodile, bear and revises other animals.

he zoo

- Students work individually or in pairs. They read the quiz and write the animals.
- Ask students to write their own quiz on animals they know.
- Students work in pairs. Student A reads his/her descriptions to Student B. Student B names the animals. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 monkey. 3 zebra. 4 parrot.
 5 bear. 6 crocodile: Activity 2: (Possible descriptions:
 1 I'm grey. I've got two big ears and a big nose.
 (elephant). 2 I've got four legs. I like milk. I don't like dogs. (cat)

Optional follow-up activity: Make some space. Demonstrate the game Sleeping Animals. Students lie on the floor (or sit at their desks with their heads on folded arms). Ask students to choose an animal and dream about it while 'sleeping'. They try to stay still while you 'hunt' them by walking around. looking for movement. Students who move have to get up and describe the animal that they were dreaming of, e.g. *I'm black, white and orange.* (tiger) Then they help you to hunt. Tell them that they cannot touch the other students. The last sleeping animal is the winner.

Worksheet 2: likes / doesn't like

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises likes / doesn't like and revises like / don't like.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They match the pictures and sentences.
- Brainstorm family words. Then ask students to write sentences about themselves and their family using like/s and don't/doesn't like, e.g. I like cats. My brother likes football. Help with new language. Early finishers can draw pictures on the back of the worksheet to go with the sentences.
- Students work in pairs. Student A reads all his/ her sentences to Student B. e.g. My sister doesn't like dogs. Student B listens carefully. Then Student B tells Student A what he/she can remember, e.g. Your sister doesn't like dogs. Student A listens and gives a point for each correctly remembered sentence. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 e, 3 f, 4 a, 5 c, 6 d; Activity 2: (Possible answers: 1 I like bears, 2 My brother likes football, 3 My sister doesn't like dogs, 4 My dad doesn't like pizza.)

Optional follow-up activity: Make some space. Demonstrate the game Chinese Whispers. Students sit in a circle. Whisper a sentence with *like/s* or *don't/ doesn't like* to the nearest student. He/She listens and whispers the same sentence to the next student. The game continues. The last student says the sentence aloud. See if it is the same sentence you said. Then students can play the game in smaller groups.

Worksheet 3: Does Joe like computers?

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises asking and answering questions with does.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They read and answer the questions.
- Students write two more questions and answers about Joe.
- Ask students to work in pairs. Student A asks Student B his/her questions about Joe. Student B answers the questions without looking at the text. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 Yes, he does. 3 No, he doesn't. 4 No, he doesn't. 5 Yes, he does. 6 No, he doesn't. Activity 2: (Possible questions and answers: 1 Does Joe eat ice cream in the park? Yes, he does. 2 Does Joe go to bed at eight o'clock? No, he doesn't.)

Optional follow-up activity: Ask students to read Joe's blog again and use it to help them write a text about their family, likes and routine. They can draw pictures or find photos. Display their work.

Worksheet 4: Animal talk

Using the worksheet

- This game practises talking about different animals.
- Cut out the cards, shuffle them and place them face down in a pile. Divide students into two teams. Each team takes it in turns to select the card at the top and make simple sentences about the animal on the card, e.g. I'm small. I'm white. I've got pink eyes. I like cheese. I don't like cats. (mouse) They get a point for each new sentence the team can make without stopping.
- Then students can play the game in smaller groups or pairs.

Optional follow-up activity: Play Animal Pictionary. Ask a volunteer to draw a picture of an animal on the board, slowly, line by line. The first student to guess the animal takes the next turn. Students can also play this in pairs. Student B tries to guess the animal before Student A finishes the picture.





Vocabulary: Animals



b

d

f









- 3 Paul doesn't like dogs.
- 5 Sue likes tigers.
- 2 Anna likes hippos.
- 4 Claire doesn't like spiders.
- 6 Tom doesn't like crocodiles.

2)

Write about you and your family.

Mu	likes	
		•

(Grammar 1: likes / doesn't like)



PHOTOCOPIABLE

2 Worksheet 4: Animal talk

Cut out and shuffle the cards. Talk about the animals.



Where we live

Worksheet 1: Places in a town

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises town words: park, playground, hospital, cinema, swimming pool, bus stop, shop, zoo, school, train station, café, street,
- Students look at the pictures and find the words in the word search. (The words go across and down.) Then they label the pictures.
- Provide students with squared paper and ask them to make their own word search. Then they swap puzzles with a partner.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 park. 3 playground. 4 hospital. 5 bus stop. 6 zoo. 7 school. 8 shop. 9 swimming pool 10 train station. 11 café. 12 street

h	0	5	p	i.	t	a	1		P
b		w	1		r				0
u		i	۵	5	a				r
5		m	y	C	1				k
5		m	g	h	n				
t		ī	r	0	5	h	0	p	
0		n	0	0	t	11	1	-	
p		g	u	1	σ				
		p	n	5	t	r	e	e	t
z	0	0	d		1			1	- C
-	-	0	-		0	c	a	f	ė
-		1	c	ī	n	e	m	a	

Activity 2: Students' own answers.

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play House. Write dashes to represent one of the town words on the board, e.g. ______ (street). Students take it in turns to guess the letters. If they guess a letter correctly, write the letter in the word. If the guess is incorrect, start to draw a house. (This house should be drawn line by line with four straight lines for the walls, two diagonal lines for the roof and three lines for the door.) The first person to guess the word takes the next turn. If the house is complete before all of the letters of the word have been guessed, you win. Students can play the game in groups.

Worksheet 2: Has your town got a school?

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises asking and answering questions with has got and places in a town.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They use the picture of the town to complete the dialogue.
- Ask students to imagine what Zula is like and write questions. Students can then work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer the questions by pretending to be Zuzu.
- KEY: Activity 1: 3 Yes, it has. 4 Yes, it has. 5 No. it hasn't. 6 Yes, it has: Activity 2: (Possible questions: 2 Has Zula)

got a playground? 3 Has Zula got a zoo? 4 Has Zula got a train station?)

Optional follow-up activity: Students draw a picture of Zula. Then they write sentences about it, e.g. Zula has got three playgrounds. Display their work.

Worksheet 3: It's next to ...

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises prepositions of place and places in a town.
- Students read the sentences and draw pictures to illustrate them. Students can compare their work with a partner.
- Then students write sentences about where things are in a different town.
- Students work in pairs. Student A reads his/her sentences to Student B. Student B listens and draws.
 Students swap roles. Then they compare their pictures.
- KEY: Activity 1: Students' drawings to show: 1 The café is next to the train station. 2 There's a park behind the school. 3 The cinema is between the shop and the swimming pool. 4 There's a street in front of the park: Activity 2: Students' own answers.

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to do a group picture dictation. Dictate a sentence for all of the students to draw, telling them to start in the centre of the page, e.g. In our town, there's a sweet shop. Pause while students draw. Continue with There's a fruit shop next to the sweet shop. There's a park behind the shops. Ask a volunteer to dictate the next sentence. The dictation continues. Students compare their drawings at the end.

Worksheet 4: Town planning

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises using has got and prepositions. It also gives students the opportunity to do project work together and create a piece of art.
- Students work in groups. Tell them that they are going to design a new town on an island. Ask them to list the things that their town has got. Encourage them to be creative and help with new vocabulary. Get them to use the picture frame to plan where the different things in the town should go.
- Students draw and colour or paint their town on A3 paper. Then they think of a name for their new town.

Optional follow-up activity: Students present their towns to the class, e.g. In my town, there's a fish shop next to the sea. The class vote on the town that they would most like to live in.

Worksheet 1: Places in a town



Look, find and write the words.





PHOTOCOPIABLE

Make a new word search.





Worksheet 2: Has your town got a school?

1	Look and answer	
۲	Hello! I'm Zuzu from the planet Zula.	
S	Welcome to my town!	
0	Thank you. Has your town got a school?	
S	' <u>Yes, it has.</u>	
Ò	Has it got a hospital?	
A.	² No, it hasn't.	
۲	Has it got a cinema?	• Has it got a swimming pool?
A.	3	S
۲	Has it got a park?	• Has it got a café?
AS)	4	₹ <u>6</u>

Write questions about the planet Zula.

1 Has Zula got a toy shop	
2	
3	
<i>L</i> ₀	?

Grammar 1: Has ... got ... ?)



3 The cinema is between the shop and the swimming pool.

4 There's a street in front of the park.

		۰.	6	
			k	
1	4	9	v	
		9	r	

PHOT

Write about a town.

The	is n	ext to the
There's	a	
		Grammar 2: Prepositions



Make a new town on an island.

- a) What has your town got?
 It's got a fish shop
 It's got a fish shop<
 - c) Plan the picture of your town.

d) Draw and colour or paint your town on a big piece of paper. Think of a name for your town.

(Art: Town planning)



The market

Worksheet 1: Food

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises food vocabulary: mangos, watermelons, lemons, grapes, potatoes, beans, eggs, bread, fish and revises apples, bananas, peas, carrots, sausages, pizza. It also raises awareness of vowels and consonants.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They use the picture to complete the words.
- Students look at the picture again and write down the other food they can see.
- Students work in pairs. Student A describes one of the foods, e.g. It's a fruit. It's big and green. Student B names the food, e.g. watermelon. Students swap.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 bread, 3 fish, 4 mangos,
 - 5 watermelons, 6 lemons, 7 grapes, 8 beans, 9 potatoes: Activity 2: (no set order) 2 sausages, 3 apples, 4 bananas, 5 pizza, 6 carrots

Optional follow-up activity: Ask students to draw a two by three bingo grid and draw six of the food words on it. Slowly say the food words, e.g. peas, mangas, potatoes, eggs Write the words down as you say them. When students hear a word from their grid, they cross it out. The first one to have six crosses says Bingo!

Worksheet 2: Would you like a/an/ some ... ?

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises Would you like ... ? and a. an and some.
- Students complete the questions.
- Ask students to choose an answer to each question and draw the missing mouths. Then they write the answers Yes, please or No. thank you.
- Students practise the dialogues in pairs.
- KEY: 2 a banana, 3 like some cheese, 4 you/some grapes, 5 Would/like an apple?, 6 Would you/some bread? Students choose and write the answer for each question.

Optional follow-up activity: Ask a question, e.g. Would you like an egg? Then add another food, e.g. Would you like an egg and some bread? Ask a volunteer to repeat and add another food word, e.g. Would you like an egg, some bread and some sausages? See how many items students can remember in one list. Students can then play in groups.

Worksheet 3: Is/Are there any ... ?

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises Is/Are there questions and answers with any. It also raises awareness of punctuation.
- Students work in pairs. They cut out a set of word cards per pair, shuffle them and lay them face up on the desk. Students then take it in turns to place a card on the desk. Student A starts a question by choosing Is or Are. Student B continues by choosing there, Student A chooses any, and so on. When a question and answer are complete. Student B chooses the first card of a new turn. Students see how many questions and answers they can make.
- KEY: (Possible questions and answers: Is there any fish? Yes, there is. Are there any beans? No, there aren't.)

Optional follow-up activity: Students work in pairs. Student A makes a question or answer from the cards without showing Student B. Student A writes the sentence down and then mixes up the cards and passes them to Student B, who has to put them together in the right order. Student A checks against the question/answer he/she wrote.

Worksheet 4: Make a fruit salad.

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet gives students the opportunity to make a healthy snack.
- Before the class, tell students that they are going to make a fruit salad and ask them to bring in a piece of fruit. Find aprons, cutting boards, peelers, blunt knives, one sharp knife and some large plastic bowls and take them to the class. Also take some extra fruit and a carton of orange juice. (If this equipment is not available, bring fruit yourself and demonstrate in class. Then ask students to do the practical activity at home with a parent.)
- In class, students work in groups. Ask them to write the list of fruit that they have got. Help with new vocabulary and spelling. Students use the pictures to help them decide what to do with the fruit and complete the chart.
- Ask students to roll up their sleeves, wash their hands, put on their apron and collect their equipment.
- Students then wash, peel and cut the fruit (carefully with the blunt knives). Help students as necessary with your sharp knife. Students put the fruit in a bowl and add some orange juice.

Optional follow-up activity: Groups take it in turns to show their fruit salad and list the ingredients. If you have sufficient bowls and spoans, students can then share their food.



Worksheet 1: Food



What can you see at the market? Complete the words.





2

What other food can you see at the market? Write the words.





Complete the questions. Choose, draw a mouth and write your answers.



PHOTOCOPIABLE

© Cambridge University Press 2012 Super Minds Teacher's Resource Book Level 2

Worksheet 3: Is/Are there any ... ?



Cut out the cards and make questions and answers.

?	Are	Is	?	Yes	Are
there	peas		there	any	fish
ls	,	any	Are		are
are	,	any	•	any	there
Are	?	÷	?	isn't	there
No	any	there	there	Yes	beans
bread	?	•	there	•	is
aren't	there	Yes	any	any	,
?		there	there	No	mangos
carrots	there				

Grammar 2: Is there any ... ?)

Worksheet 4: Make a fruit salad.









wash

peel

cut

pour

a) Write a list of the fruit you have got and tick what you do with them.

fruit	wash	peel	cut	pour
apple banana orange juice	~	1	~ ~	~

b) Get ready to cook.







roll up your sleeves

wash your hands

put on an apron

c) Find your equipment.

d) Make your fruit salad.





peeler





cutting board



bowl





Worksheet 1: My bedroom

Using the worksheet

 This worksheet practises furniture words: bed, wardrobe, mirror, lamp, sofa, armchair, table, mat.

My bedroom

- Students label the furniture individually or in pairs.
- Ask students to draw and label their own bedroom.
 Help with new vocabulary.
- Students work in pairs. Student A says a sentence about his/her bedroom to Student B, e.g. I've got a table in my bedroom. Student B says Snap! if he/ she has the same furniture. Then Student B says a sentence about his/her room.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 wardrobe, 3 mirror. 4 lamp, 5 sofa. 6 armchair. 7 table. 8 mat; Activity 2: Students' own answers.

Optional follow-up activity: Do a survey to find out the most common items in students' bedrooms. Write furniture items on the board. Ask, e.g. *Have you got a mirror*? Students put their hands up if the answer is yes. Write the number next to the furniture, e.g. *mirrors: 10.* Volunteers ask the remaining questions.

Worksheet 2: this/that/these/those

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises this/that/these/those.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They use the pictures to help them match the sentence halves.
- Ask students to write four more sentences or questions about the pictures.
- Students work in pairs. They take it in turns to point at something in the picture and say one of their sentences or questions. e.g. Student A asks Do you like that lamp? Student B replies Yes, I do or No, I don't. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 a, 3 d, 4 f, 5 b, 6 c; Activity 2: (Students own answers.)

Optional follow-up activity: Play Musical Chairs. Arrange the chairs in two rows, back to back, so there is one chair per student. Ask students to sit on the chairs. Play some music. Students walk/dance around the chairs. Take one chair away then stop the music. Students run to sit on a chair. The one who is left standing has to say a sentence with *this, that, these* or *those*, e.g. *I like that ruler.* They should move around the classroom and point at or touch the object(s). If they make a correct sentence, they can continue with the game. If they make a mistake, they are out. Each time a student is out, remove one more chair while the music is playing, so there is always one student who must make a sentence when the music stops.

Alternatively, students stay at their desks and pass a book around until the music stops. The student holding the book when this happens makes a sentence with *this, that, these* or *those*. If the sentence is incorrect, the student is out.

Worksheet 3: Whose + this/that/ these/those

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises questions and answers with Whose ... is this/that? and Whose ... are these/ those? It's/They're (name)'s/mine.
- Elicit what is happening in the pictures (the mother is angry because the house is messy when she gets home). Do this in L1 if necessary.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They
 complete the story by copying the words into the
 correct speech bubble.
- Ask students to act out the story in pairs.

KEY: Activity 1: 2 this, 3 mine. 4 It's, 5 that, 6 Sorry Optional follow-up activity: Students make their own Whose ... ? story in pairs. Brainstorm some possible storylines in L1, e.g. a messy classroom and an angry teacher or a messy garden and an angry dad. Encourage students to act out their story.

Worksheet 4: Recycling

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet encourages students to find out about recycling in their school. It also teaches students how to take responsibility for their environment.
- Students look at the pictures of the bathroom, playground, classroom and dining room. Ask them to name these places and the rubbish in the bins.
 Help with new vocabulary. Students complete the sentences using the wordbank to help them.
- As a class, visit the bins in the school and make a list of the rubbish you find. Use gloves if you want to touch anything. Tell students not to touch the rubbish. When you return to the classroom, students complete Activity 2.
- Students work in groups and think about what rubbish can be recycled. Ask students to compare their answers with another group.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 fruit, 3 paper, 4 plastic bottles; Activity 2: (Possible answers: 2 We put paper and old pens in the bin in the classroom. 3 We put food in the bin in the dining room. 4 We put paper towels in the bin in the bathroom.)

Optional follow-up activity: Students make posters in groups with recycling rules for the school.



Draw and label your bedroom.

2)



Vocabulary: Furniture

5 Worksheet 2: this/that/these/ those

Look, read and match.



Write four more questions or sentences.



4

Grammar 1: this, that, these, those)

2

3

PHOTOCOPIABLE

Worksheet 3: Whose + this/that/ these/those

Write the words in the story.



Act out the story.

Grammar 2: Whose ... this/that/these/those ... ?)



Read and complete the sentences.



Science: Recycling)

PHOTOCOPIABLE

Worksheet 1: The face

Using the worksheet

This worksheet practises face words: hair, ears, eyes, nose, mouth, chin, cheeks, glasses and revises body words foot, arm, knee, toes, leg and hand.

People

- Students can work individually or in pairs. Tell them to look at the man's face and use it to help them solve and write the anagrams.
- Students then choose four of the body words and make anagrams, writing each on a separate piece of paper.
- Students work in pairs and swap and solve the body anagrams, then label a-f in the picture.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 eyes. 3 glasses. 4 nose. 5 cheeks. 6 ears. 7 mouth. 8 chin: Activity 2: a arm. b hand. c knee. d leg. e foot. f toes

Optional follow-up activity: Play Body Pictionary. Ask volunteers to take it in turns to draw a picture of a body part from the worksheet on the board, slowly, line by line. The first student to hold up their hand and guess the body part takes the next turn.

Worksheet 2: I'm happy today!

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises am/is/are and adjectives.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They look at the pictures and describe how the animals are feeling.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 are angry. 3 is sad. 4 is scared. 5 are excited. 6 is tired; Activity 2: Students' own answers.
- Ask students to draw a picture and write a sentence to describe how they are feeling.
- Show students how to fold the worksheet in half so that their sentence is hidden. Ask students to come to the front of the class and show their pictures. Get students to ask questions. e.g. Are you happy? Students respond with. e.g. No. I'm not happy. I'm tired or Yes. I'm happy and I'm excited. Students can also walk round the class. showing their pictures and asking and answering questions.

Optional follow-up activity: Ask students to tell you the other adjectives they know, e.g. *small, beautiful.* Check meaning and write them on the board. Make some space in the classroom. Play a miming game with the adjectives. Call out an adjective, e.g. *happy*. Students act out the adjective. The person who does the best acting calls out the next adjective.

Worksheet 3: my/her/his/its/our/their birthday

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises possessive adjectives and the names of the months.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the missing possessive adjectives.
- Ask students to help you write the months of the year on the board. Students then work individually and make a chart on the back of the worksheet and complete it with sentences about their family's birthdays. (They may need to ask about this for homework.)
- Students work in pairs and take it in turns to read their sentences aloud to each other.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 His, 3 Their, 4 Her, 5 Its, 6 Our; Activity 2: Students' own answers.

Optional follow-up activity: Do a class survey to find out the months students are barn in. Ask, e.g. Who has got a birthday in January? Students stand up and form a line in month order.

Worksheet 4: Butterflies

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises finding out and asking for information about native butterflies. It also practises writing and sharing factual information.
- Students can work individually or in pairs. They find information about the colour, habitat and diet of butterflies that live in their country. They share what they already know, look on the Internet, look at an encyclopaedia and ask you for information. Help with new language as necessary.
- Students write about the butterflies and draw pictures.
- Ask students to present their work to another student or pair. The student(s) who are listening can ask questions about the butterfly, e.g. What is it called? What colour is it? Where does it live? What does it eat?
- KEY: Activity 2: (Possible answers: This is a (name) butterfly. It is (colour). It lives in (place). It eats (food).)

Optional follow-up activity: Make a class display of the butterflies that students have found out about. Students could take turns to pretend they are reporters on a nature programme and act out talking about one of the butterflies as if they are looking at it 'in the wild'. Encourage them to use the language on the worksheet, e.g. This is a (name) butterfly.









Write the face words.

ho	168				
5 sece	kh 6	sear	7	tomuh	hcni

Make anagrams of the body words.	
----------------------------------	--

foot arm knee toes leg hand



156

PHOTOCOPIABLE

tofo foot





1 The dog _____is happy _____. 2 The monkeys _



3 The hippo _



- 5 The tigers ______. 6 The cat _____
- How are you today? 2 Draw and write.

I am _____ today!



- . 4 The mouse





Grammar 1: am / is / are + adjective



Worksheet 3: my/her/his/its/our/ their birthday



Write My, Her, His, Its, Our or Their.







 Mu birthday is in January.



4 _____ birthday is in June. 2 _____ birthday is in March.





3 _____ birthday is in October.



6 _____ birthday is in January.

2

Find out and write about your family's birthdays.

5

Months	Birthdays
January	My dad's birthday is in January.
February	
March	

Grammar 2: The months; possessive adjectives

www.irLanguage.com



PHOTOCOPIABLE

6 Worksheet 4: Butterflies

6

Find out about the butterflies in your country.

- a What are they called?
- b What colours are they?
- c Where do they live?
- d What do they eat?

Draw and write about three butterflies.

	2
This is a marble white butterfly It is black and white It lives in tall grass It eats purple flowers	This is a It is It lives It eats
3	4

Science: Butterflies



7 Off we go!

Worksheet 1: Transport

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises transport words: helicopter, larry, bus, boat, scooter, skateboard, motorbike, taxi and revises car, plane, bike and go-kart.
- Use the pictures to teach/check street, sea, park and sky. Students work individually or in pairs. They look at the large picture and write the transport words in the correct column.
- Students add other transport words to the chart, then compare their charts.
- KEY: Activity 1: Street: bus, larry, taxi, motorbike: Park: skateboard, scooter; Sea: boat; Sky: helicopter; Activity 2: (Possible answers: Street: car: Park: bike, go-kart; Sea: submarine; Sky: plane)

Optional follow-up activity: Spell out one of the transport words. Pause after each letter, e.g. *h* e *l i c* o *p t* e *r*. Students put up their hand when they know the word. Notice who puts up their hand first, but don't ask for the answer. Once you have finished spelling the word, you can then ask the first student to say the word and spell it. If they are right, they take the next turn.

Worksheet 2: I'd like to ...

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises I'd like to.
- Go through the forms of the verb to show students that they are the same, e.g. I/You/He/She/We/They would like to + infinitive.
- Check the meaning of pet. Students read and answer True or False.
- Students write four true sentences about themselves.
- Students work in small groups and read out their sentences.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 False, 3 True, 4 True, 5 False, 6 True; Activity 2: (Possible answers: 2 I'd like to have a swimming pool. 3 I'd like to have a pet cat. 4 I'd like to drive a lorry.)

Optional follow-up activity: Say I'd and encourage a volunteer to say *like*. Continue the sentence by saying to and elicit a verb from the volunteer, e.g. *drive*. Say the next word, e.g. a and get the volunteer to finish by saying, e.g. car. Say the complete sentence (I'd like to drive a car). Students play the game in pairs, taking turns to say a word. Make sure that they take turns starting the sentence.

Worksheet 3: ... ing

Using the worksheet

160

- This worksheet practises questions and answers with the present continuous.
- Students read and choose the correct answer.

- Students draw pictures to illustrate the text, then act out the dialogues.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 b. 3 b. 4 a. 5 a. 6 b: Activity 2: Drawings of 2 boy playing computer games.
 3 someone doing homework, 4 two or more people watching TV, 5 two or more people cooking.
 6 girl brushing teeth.

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play Musical Statues. Blindfold a volunteer and write an action on the board. e.g. You're playing tennis. Students act out the action while you play some music. Stop the music. Students freeze. Clean the board and remove the blindfold. The volunteer must guess what the class are doing. If any students move during this process, they are out.

Worksheet 4: A transport survey

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises asking questions with do for a survey.
- Students work in pairs. Ask them to look at the survey and elicit all the questions they need, e.g. for Find someone who rides a bike to school, they will ask Do you ride a bike to school?
- Students then write two more questions.
- Divide the class into four groups. Students conduct the survey within their group. They write down the name of the students who answer yes to a question.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 Do you walk to school? 3 Do you come to school by car? 4 Do you come to school by bus? 5 Do you come to school by taxi? 6 Do you come to school by train? 7 Do you have a 15-minute journey to school? 8 Do you have a 30-minute journey to school?

Optional follow-up activity: For the first six questions of the survey, elicit the numbers of students who use each mode of transport from the groups and write totals on the board. Create the outline of a bar chart like the one below.



Students copy and colour in the chart to show how many students use each mode of transport to travel to school.





Look and write the words in the chart.





2

Think of more transport words to write in the chart.

Vocabulary: Transport

T161

PHOTOCOPIABLE

© Cambridge University Press 2012 Super Minds Teacher's Resource Book Level 2

7 Worksheet 2: I'd like to ...

Read and write True or False.

Robert	I'd like to drive a lorry and have a big house.
Joanna 🤅	I'd like to fly a helicopter and have a pet lizard.
Amy	I'd like to sail a boat and have a new computer.
віЦ	I'd like to ride a motorbike and have a pet dog.
Owen	I'd like to drive a car and have a big house.
Sarah	I'd like to fly a kite and have a skateboard.
Helen	I'd like to drive a car and have a computer.
Matthew	I'd like to ride a scooter and have a swimming pool.

1	Robert and Owen would like to have a big house.	True
2	Bill and Matthew would like to ride a motorbike.	
3	Joanna and Bill would like a pet.	
4	Sarah would like to have a skateboard.	
5	Helen, Owen and Robert would like to drive a car.	
6	Amy and Helen would like a computer.	

2	What would you like to do? Write sentences.						
	1	I'd like to fly a helicopter					
	2	· · ·					
	3						
	4	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					

Grammar 1: I'd like to

T162

PHOTOCOPIABLE

Worksheet 3: ... ing



Read and circle the correct answer.

- 1 What are you doing?
 - (a)) I'm painting a picture.
- 2 Is he playing computer games?a) Yes, she is.
- 3 Are you doing your homework?
 - a) Yes, I am doing
- 4 Are they watching TV?
 - a) Yes, they are.
- 5 What are they doing?
 - a) They're cooking lunch.
- 6 Is she having a shower?
 - a) No, she is.
 She's brushing her teeth.

- b) I painting a picture.
- b) Yes, he is.
- b) Yes, I am.
- b) Yes, are they watching TV.
- b) They're cook lunch.
- b) No, she isn't She's brushing her teeth.

2

Read again and draw pictures. Then act.



Grammar 2: Questions and answers with verb + -ing

Worksheet 4: A transport survey

Make questions to ask your friends.

Do you ride a bike to school?





	50
)	
	1
the sur	vey.
	the sur

(Geography: Transport and time



PHOTOCOPIABLE

Sports club

Worksheet 1: Sport

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises sport words: badminton, football, swimming, volleyball, baseball, athletics, hockey, basketball, tennis, table tennis.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They look at the pictures and find the words in the word search. Then they label the pictures.
- KEY: 2 football, 3 swimming, 4 volleyball, 5 baseball, 6 athletics, 7 hockey, 8 basketball, 9 tennis, 10 table tennis

ь	α	d	m	÷.	n	t	0	n		٧	
0	t			1						0	f
5	h	5								L.	0
k	I.	w	t	e	n	n	1	5		t	0
e	e	î					h			e	t
t	t	m					0			Y	b
ь	4.	m					¢			ь	a
а	c	i					k			a	1
1	\$	n		ь	a	5	e	b	a	L	1
ι		9					y			ι	
t	a	b	1	e	t	e	n	n	i	5	

Optional follow-up activity: Mime playing one of the sports and ask students to guess what sport you are doing. Ask a volunteer to do the next mime. The game can continue in pairs. Student A mimes playing a sport and Student B guesses. Students swap roles.

Worksheet 2: Reading is great.

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises -ing forms, reading a book, riding a bike, playing football, watching TV, painting a picture, listening to music, making a sandcastle, flying a kite and adjectives, fun, exciting, great, boring, difficult.
- Ask students to look at the pictures and elicit the activity in each one.
- Students work individually. They make four true and four false sentences using the -ing forms and adjectives in the table.
- Students work in pairs. Student A reads one of his/ her sentences from Activity 1 or 2 to Student B.
 Student B listens and guesses whether the sentence is true or false. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: (Possible answers: 2 Riding a bike is fun. 3 Playing football is exciting. 4 Flying a kite is difficult.) Activity 2: (Possible answers: 2 Listening to music is exciting. 3 Making a sandcastle is difficult. 4 Watching TV is boring.)

Optional follow-up activity: Make some space in the classroom. Demonstrate how to play Simon says. Say, e.g. Simon says watching TV is fun. Students act this out. Say, e.g. Playing hockey is difficult. Students should not act this out because you haven't said Simon says. When students make a mistake, they sit down. The winner plays Simon in the next game.

Worksheet 3: like + -ing with So do I and I don't

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises like + -ing with So do I and I don't.
- Students work in pairs. They cut out the cards, shuffle them and place them face down so both students have an equal pile of cards in front of them. Then they cut out the faces.
- Student A picks up a card, e.g. swimming and makes a sentence, e.g. I like swimming. Student B picks up a face and says So do I or I don't to match the sentence. Students swap roles.

Optional follow-up activity: Students work with the same partner to make a poster. They divide it into three columns: We like (name) likes (name) doesn't like, and draw pictures to illustrate their individual and common likes and dislikes. Encourage students to ask and answer questions about the poster while they work, e.g. What do you like doing? I like / I don't like ...

Students can also stick the pictures from the worksheet on the poster. Display the posters.

Worksheet 4: Sport and breathing

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises keeping a diary and encourages students to find out more about the relationship between sport and breathing.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They make a list of all of the sport and other physical activity that they usually do.
- Ask students to keep a diary of all of the sport they do for one week and ask them to remember to count their breathing for one minute as soon as they stop each sport.
- Students compare their findings with a partner.

Optional follow-up activity: Make some space in the classroom or go outside. Demonstrate how to cool down after sport by doing some gentle stretching exercises. Call out instructions in English as you do the exercises and encourage students to repeat, e.g. touch the sky, touch your toes, bend to the left, bend to the right. Students can then take it in turns to give the class an instruction. This activity can also be done carefully with students at their desks.



Look, find and write the words.



1 badminton

5

7

0















Vocabulary: Sport

PHOTOCOPIABLE



Make four true sentences.



1	Reading a book is great	
2		
3	·	
4	·	

2

Make four false sentences.

ainting pictures is boring	

Grammar 1: -ing forms)


Cut out and play the game.



8 Worksheet 4: Sport and breathing

Make a sport and breathing diary.

Day of the week	Sport	Breathing	
Monday	Play football at school. Ride my bike in the park after school.	40 breaths in one minute. 35 breaths in one minute.	
Tuesday			
Wednesday			
Thursday			
Friday			
Saturday			
Sunday			
		0	
0		Science: S	sport

Holiday plans

Worksheet 1: Holiday activities

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet practises holiday activities: visit cousins, keep a scrapbook, help in the garden/ house, build a tree house, learn to play basketball, go camping/hiking, take painting lessons.
- Students work individually or in pairs. Tell them to cover the column on the left, look at the activities and predict the words on the left. Then they look and match the words.
- Students label the pictures with the correct holiday words.
- Ask students to work in pairs. Student A mimes an activity and Student B guesses it. Students swap roles.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 a or h. 3 f. 4 g. 5 d. 6 b. 7 e. 8 a or h. 9 c; Activity 2: 2 build a tree house. 3 help in the garden. 4 take painting lessons. 5 help in the house. 6 learn to play basketball. 7 go hiking. 8 visit cousins. 9 keep a scrapbook

Optional follow-up activity: Students work in pairs. They choose a holiday activity and brainstorm the things that they would need to do it. Students share what they already know, look on the Internet and in dictionaries and ask you for information. Help with new language. Students present their holiday activity. e.g. My holiday activity is 'keep a scrapbook'. To keep a scrapbook you need a notebook. a pencil. a rubber. colouring pens. photographs, postcards, scissors and glue.

Worksheet 2: Can I ... ?

Using the worksheet

- This game practises can for requests and revises vocabulary for holiday activities.
- Students work in pairs or small groups. Give each group a dice or spinner and some counters. Students put the counters on Start. Students take turns to throw the dice. The student with the highest score in each group starts. Students move the appropriate number of spaces. If they land on a picture with ? they ask a question using the picture, e.g. Can I go hiking? If they make a mistake they miss a turn. If they land on Yes. you can! / No. you can't! they move forward/back two spaces. Monitor and correct as necessary. The winner is the first student to reach Finish.

Optional follow-up activity: Ask students about the board games they play at home. Then ask them to work in groups and make their own board game to revise a unit from Super Minds 2. Monitor and help as necessary. Make copies of the board games and play them with the class as a revision activity.

Worksheet 3: Asking questions

Using the worksheet

- This worksheet revises questions and answers.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They use the prompts to write five more questions to ask a friend about their holidays. Encourage them to use the pictures to help them think of ideas for the questions.
- Students work in pairs. Student A asks Student B his/her questions and writes the answers. Students swap roles.
- Early finishers can work with a different partner and report what they found out, e.g. Lucy likes reading on holiday.
- KEY: Activity 1: 2 What do you eat on holiday? 3 Would you like to go camping? 4 When do you get up? 5 Can you make sandcastles? 6 Have you got a bike? Activity 2: (Possible answers: 2 I eat fruit and ice cream. 3 Yes, please. 4 I get up at nine o'clock. 5 No, I can't. 6 Yes, I have.)

Optional follow-up activity: Demonstrate how to play What's the Question? Write the answer to a holiday question about you on the board. Ask students to think about the question that goes with your answer and put up their hands when they have got a suggestion. Students can continue the game in groups.

Worksheet 4: Fairy tales

Using the worksheet

- This activity encourages students to be creative and think of their own fairy tale.
- Students work individually or in pairs. They choose the characters, a place and an event. Then they write their fairy tale. Monitor and help with new language as necessary. (If time, they can cut out their fairy tale, paste it onto a larger piece of paper and illustrate it or cut out the pictures they have chosen from the worksheet.)
- Students read their fairy tales to the class.
- With weaker classes you can work together and create a fairy tale on the board for students to copy into their notebooks. It can be a combination of fairy tales that students know.

Optional follow-up activity: Choose a traditional fairy tale from your country to make into an end-ofterm play. Create a simple script in English with the students. Students can dress up and make props for the play. Invite parents and the head teacher to see it. Worksheet 1: Holiday activities

Match the words.



Look and write the words from Activity 1.



irLanguage.com

Vocabulary: Holiday and leisure activities

T171

PHOTOCOPIABLE

© Cambridge University Press 2012 Super Minds Teacher's Resource Book Level 2



Play the board game.



Grammar 1: can for requests)

T172

PHOTOCOPIABLE



Write questions about the holidays.



Interview your friend and write their answers.

PHOTOCOPIABLE

5	NULT D	stood at the second second	8
0	1 Yes, I do		2
	2		7
D	3	24)?	سري
1	4		14
2	5	•	2
0	6	•	
		مرجع زبان ايرانيان	32



Make a fairy tale.

a) Look, choose and circle two good characters.





PHOTOCOPIABLE



🙄 Listen and circle.

- 1 (There's a board) There are some boards in the classroom.
- 2 There's a computer / There are some computers in the classroom.
- 3 There's a book / There are some books in the classroom.
- 4 There's a teacher / There are some teachers in the classroom.
- 5 The teacher says, 'Sit down.' / 'Don't sit down.'
- 6 The teacher says, 'Open your books.' / 'Don't open your books.'

irLanguage.com

2

PHOTOCOPIABLE

© Cambridge University Press 2012 Super Minds Teacher's Resource Book Level 2



Name



Back to





Read and number the pictures.

- 1 There's an apple.
- 2 Stand up.
- 3 There's a pen.

- 4 Don't stand up.
- 5 There are some pens.
- 6 Open your bag.



PHOTOCOPIABLE









a

Listen and complete.

eight seven ten goes to school goes to bed gets up

- 1 It's <u>seven</u> o'clock.
- 2 Peter _____ at 7 o'clock.
- 3 It's ______ o'clock.
- 4 Peter _____ at 8 o'clock.
- 5 It's ______ o'clock.
- 6 Peter ______ at 10 o'clock.



Name



Read and circle.













- 1 (get)/ go up
- 2 have / get breakfast
- 3 brush / have your teeth
- 4 go / play in the park
- 5 get / watch TV
- 6 drink / have dinner

2

Match the questions and answers.

- 1 Is it three o'clock?
- 2 What's the time?
- 3 When does he go to school?
- 4 When does she go to bed?
- 5 When do you get dressed?
- 6 Is it nine o'clock?

- He goes to school at eight o'clock.
- I get dressed at seven o'clock.
- It's eleven o'clock.
- d Yes, it is. It's three o'clock!
- No, it isn't. It's eight o'clock.
- f She goes to bed at nine o'clock.





Name



Make words.





. hippo



уектпо



roieloccd

rpoatr



girte



abre

6



Read and circle.

- 1 Does / Do you like snakes?
- 2 I don't / doesn't like spiders.
- 3 Do / Does Tom like lizards?
- 4 My cat doesn't / don't like dogs.
- 5 Do / Doesn't you like zebras?
- 6 Jane doesn't / don't like elephants.



T180

PHOTOCOPIABLE

مرجع زبان ايرانيان

Progress test 1: Listening

Name



🍄 Listen and number.





🖕 Listen and tick (🗸) the correct box.



1	The town has got a playground.	√ yes	no
2	The town has got a cinema.	yes	no
3	The train station is next to the hospital.	yes	no
4	The park is behind the school.	yes	no
5	The book shop is between the shoe shop and the café.	yes	no
6	The bus stop is in front of the swimming pool.	yes	no

Name



Write the words.





Read, look and complete.





PHOTOCOPIABLE



Name



Listen and tick (1) or cross (X).





Listen and write Y (yes) or N (no).





- 1 Would Paul like some bread?
- 2 Are there any tomatoes?
- 3 Are there any apples?
- 4 Would Paul like a mango?
- 5 Is there any orange juice?
- 6 Is there any milk?



Name ___



Write the words.





Match the questions and answers.

- 1 Is there any fish? _____
- 2 Would you like some potatoes?
- 3 Are there any beans?
- 4 Would you like a banana?
- 5 I'm thirsty. Is there any orange juice?
- 6 Are there any eggs?

- No, thank you. I'm not hungry.
- b No, there isn't, but there is some apple juice.
- c No, there isn't.
 - d Yes, there are some eggs.
 - e No, there aren't.
- f Yes, please. I like bananas.



Name _



Make words.



clock

rmrior



betal

2





dawboerr



faos

3



186

Look, read and number.



- c Whose shoes are those?
- f I like that hat.



Julie is tired. yes 1 no 2 Robert is excited. yes no 3 David is scared. yes no 4 Mary is sad. yes no 5 Ben is angry. yes no 6 Louise is happy. yes no

Name

Read and complete the words. Then colour the picture.

- 1 Zulu's eyes are black.
- 2 Zulu's _l_sse_are yellow.
- 3 Zulu's __r s are orange.
- 4 Zulu's _o__ is blue.
- 5 Zulu's m ____ is pink.
- 6 Zulu's f___ is green.

Read and circle.



- I'm Kate. Me / My birthday is in January. 1
- John is my friend. His / Their birthday is in March. 2
- 3 We're Lucy and Joanne. Our / Her birthdays are in April.
- 4 The next birthday is Julie's. Your / Her birthday is in June.
- 5 Look! It's Jim and Ben. Their / My birthdays are in September.
- 6 Our teacher is Mr Brown. Our / His birthday is in November.

مرجع زبان ايرانيان



Name



😘 Listen and tick (🗸) or cross (X).





😳 Listen and circle.



1 I'd like to go to Italy / drive a lorry.

2 I'd like to have a cat / ride a motorbike.

- 3 I'd like to fly a helicopter / write a book.
- 4 I'd like to go to the jungle / have a zebra.
- 5 I'd like to drive a car / have a dog.
- 6 I'd like to play computer games / fly a plane.

www.irLanguage.com



irLanguage.com



Name







😘 Listen and draw 😊 or 😕.



Name



Make words.



ceyhok







domnatnbi



Read and match.

1 What sport do you like

3 I like playing the guitar.

4 What do you like doing?

5 Do you like singing?

6 What do you think

about reading?

doing? -

2 I like singing.





eltba ninset



- a I like playing football.
- b No, I don't.
- c So do I. Singing is fun!
- d Reading is great!
- I don't. Playing the guitar is boring.
- f I like playing baseball. It's fun!



PHOTOCOPIABLE























T193



Listen and write y (yes) or N (no).

- 1 Can Sarah watch TV?
- 2 Can Tom take riding lessons?
- 3 Can Grandma help in the garden?
- 4 Can Sarah and Tom visit their cousins?
- 5 Can Dad help in the kitchen?
- 6 Can Sarah and Tom have pizza for dinner?



Name



Read and circle.



go (camping) / camp



3 keep / build a scrapbook



5 draw / build a tree house 6 take ride / riding lessons



2 learn to / learn swim



4 help in / to the garden





Read and complete the questions.



Progress tests

Introduction to the progress tests

There are two progress tests for each unit. The first test is a listening test. The second test is a reading and writing test. There are two activities in each test. These activities cover the unit vocabulary and grammar seen on the first, second and fourth pages of each unit in the Student's Book and Workbook. The first activity covers vocabulary and the second activity covers grammar.

There are five questions and an example in each activity of the progress tests. Each progress test is marked out of 10. Each progress test should take 20 to 30 minutes of class time. The total mark for both progress tests in the unit is 20.

The progress tests can be used in a number of ways. You might choose to do them both together at the end of a unit. Or you might choose to do one of the two progress tests once students have completed the first half of each unit of the Student's Book and Workbook and then save the other progress test until students have completed the entire unit. Alternatively, you might choose to do one of the tests at the end of each unit and then save the other test until the end of term. This staged approach will help you to see what students have learnt and understood in the short term and what they can remember in the long term. It will also give students an opportunity to revise / ask for help between tests in order to improve their mark.

Back to school

Progress test 1: Listening



Listen and tick (1) or cross (X).

Students listen and tick the box when the word matches the picture. They put a cross in the box when it doesn't match.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 chair
- 2 bookcase
- 3 door
- 4 clock
- 5 cupboard
- 6 window

KEY: 2 . 3 x. 4 x. 5 . 6 x

2 Listen and circle.

Students listen and circle the correct option.

TAPESCRIPT

1 Boy: Back to school! Girl: Yes! Boy: Look at the classroom! Girl: Wow!

Boy: There's a board!

- 2
- Girl: And there's a computer!
- з
- Boy: There are some books!
- z

Girl: And there's a teacher.

5

Teacher: Hello, I'm Mrs Brown. Sit down, please. Girl and boy: Hello, Mrs Brown,

6

Teacher: Don't open your books.

KEY: 2 There's a computer, 3 There are some books, 4 There's a teacher, 5 'Sit down', 6 'Don't open your books."

Back to school

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Write the words.

Students look at the picture and label it with the correct words.

KEY: 2 clock, 3 wall, 4 desk, 5 bookcase, 6 floor

Read and number the pictures.

Students read the sentences and match them to the pictures by writing numbers in the boxes.

KEY: a 3, b 5, c 2, d 4, e 6

Unit 1



Listen and tick (/) the correct picture.

Students listen and tick the correct picture.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 brush your teeth
- 2 go to the park
- 3 get dressed
- 4 have breakfast 5 play computer games
- 6 go to bed

KEY: 2b. 3a, 4a, 5b, 6a



1 Listen and complete.

Students listen and complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box.

TAPESCRIPT

1

Man: What's the time? Woman: It's seven o'clock.

2

Man: Peter gets up at seven o'clock. Peter! Get up! Boy: OK. Dad.

3

Man: What's the time?

Woman: It's eight o'clock.

4

Man: Peter goes to school at eight o'clock. Peter! Go to school!

Boy: OK, Dad.

5

Man: What's the time?

Woman: It's ten o'clock.

6

Man: Peter goes to bed at ten o'clock. Peter! Go to bed!

Boy: OK, Dad. Goodnight.

KEY: 2 gets up, 3 eight, 4 goes to school, 5 ten, 6 goes to bed

Unit 1

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Read and circle.

Students read and circle the correct word.

KEY: 2 have, 3 brush, 4 play, 5 watch, 6 have

2 Match the questions and answers.

Students read the questions and match them to the correct answers by drawing lines.

KEY: 2 c. 3 a. 4 f. 5 b. 6 e

Unit 2

Progress test 1: Listening

Listen and colour.

Students listen and colour the animals. (As students listen, they mark each picture with the correct colour. They complete the colouring after the test.)

TAPESCRIPT

T196

- 1 Colour the zebra black and white.
- 2 Colour the monkey brown.
- 3 Colour the hippo grey.
- 4 Colour the parrot yellow and blue.
- 5 Colour the crocodile green.
- 6 Colour the tiger orange and black.

KEY: orange and black tiger, brown monkey, green crocodile, yellow and blue parrot, grey hippo

2 Listen and draw (2) or (8).

Students listen and draw the correct face for the child in the picture (a happy face if he/she likes the animal and a sad face if he/she doesn't like the animal).

TAPESCRIPT

4 Man: Welcome to the zoo! Group: Thank you! Girl: Does Karen like crocodiles? Boy: Yes, she does. 2 Boy: Does Gary like tigers? Girl: Yes, he does. 3 Girl: Sarah doesn't like bears. Boy: Oh! I like bears. They're my favourite animal. Boy: Richard likes zebras. Girl: And he likes horses. 5 Girl: What does Adam like? Boy: Adam likes hippos.

6

Boy: Do you like parrots. Julie? Girl: No, I don't. Do you? Boy: Yes, I do.

KEY: 2 (). 3 (). 4 (). 5 (). 6 ()

Unit 2

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Make words.

Students look at the pictures, solve the anagrams and write the words.

KEY: 2 crocodile, 3 tiger, 4 monkey, 5 parrot, 6 bear

2 Read and circle.

Students read and circle the correct word.

KEY: 2 don't, 3 Does, 4 doesn't, 5 Do, 6 doesn't

Unit 3

Progress test 1: Listening 🧖



Listen and number.

Students listen and number the places.

TAPESCRIPT AND KEY

- hospital
- 2 cinema
- 3 train station
- 4 park
- 5 café
- 6 swimming pool

KEY: 2 picture of cinema. 3 picture of train station. 4 picture of park, 5 picture of café, 6 picture of swimming pool



Listen and tick (1) the correct box.



Students read the sentences. Then they listen and tick the yes box when the sentence matches the dialogue and tick the no box when it doesn't.

TAPESCRIPT

1

Girl: Look. This is a map of my town. Boy: Great! Has your town got a playground? Girl: Yes, it has. Boy: Good!

2

Boy: And has your town got a cinema? Girl: Yes, it has,

3

Girl: Look at the map. We're at the train station. Boy: And is this the hospital? It's next to the train station.

Girl: Yes, it is.

4

Boy: Has your town got a park?

Girl: Yes, it has. Look at the map. It's next to the school.

5

Boy: Has your town got a book shop?

Girl: Yes, it has, It's behind the café.

6

Boy: There's a bus stop in front of the swimming pool. Let's go swimming and then get the bus to the café. Girl: OK.

KEY: 2 yes. 3 yes. 4 no. 5 no. 6 yes

Unit 3

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Write the words.

Students look at the pictures and write the words.

KEY: 2 train station, 3 playground, 4 swimming pool. 5 cinema. 6 street

Read, look and complete.

Students look at the picture, read the sentences and complete the gaps with the correct words from the box.

KEY: 2 next to, 3 between, 4 has, 5 behind, 6 got

Unit 4

Progress test 1: Listening



Listen and tick (1) or cross (X).

Students listen and tick the box when the word matches the picture. They put a cross in the box when it doesn't match.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 lemons
- 2 mangos
- з beans 4 fish
- 5 potatoes
- 6 grapes

KEY: 2 . 3 X. 4 . 5 X. 6 .



Students read the questions. Then they listen and answer them by writing Y for yes or N for no.

TAPESCRIPT

1 Mum: Hello, Paul. Paul: Hello, Mum. I'm hungry!

Mum: Would you like some bread and cheese? Paul: Yes, please!

2

Paul: Are there any tomatoes?

Mum: Yes, there are.

3

Paul: Are there any grapes?

Mum: No. there aren't any grapes, but there are some apples.

Paul: Great!

Mum: Would you like a mango? Paul: No, thank you.

5

Paul: Is there any orange juice? Mum: No. there isn't.

Paul: Is there any milk? Mum: Yes, there is. Here you are. Paul: Thanks, Mum!

KEY: 2 Y. 3 Y. 4 N. 5 N. 6 Y

Unit 4

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Write the words.

Students look at the picture and label it with the correct words.

KEY: 2 lemons, 3 tomatoes, 4 watermelons, 5 mangos, 6 grapes

Match the questions and answers.

Students read the questions and match them to the correct answers by drawing lines.

KEY: 2 a, 3 e, 4 f, 5 b, 6 d

Unit 5



Listen and colour.

Students listen and colour the furniture. (As students listen, they mark each picture with the correct colour. They complete the colouring after the test.)

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 Colour the mirror black.
- 2 Colour the bed red and yellow.
- 3 Colour the wardrobe blue.
- 4 Colour the table brown.
- 5 Colour the lamp green.
- 6 Colour the mat orange and purple.
- KEY: 2 red and yellow bed, 3 blue wardrobe, 4 brown table. 5 green lamp, 6 orange and purple mat



Students listen and complete the sentences with the missing words from the box.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1
- Woman: What a mess! Oh! But I like this pencil.
- 2

Woman: Whose sweaters are those?

3

Woman: I like Ann's book.

4

Woman: Oh dear! Whose schoolbags are these?

Woman: I like that pencil case.

6

Woman: Ah! It's Ben's ruler.

KEY: 2 those, 3 Ann's, 4 these, 5 that, 6 Ben's

Unit 5

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Make words.

Students look at the pictures, solve the anagrams and write the words.

KEY: 2 table, 3 wardrobe, 4 mirror, 5 armchair, 6 sofa

2 Look, read and number.

Students read the sentences and match them to the pictures by writing letters in the boxes.

KEY: 2 d, 3 c, 4 a, 5 e, 6 b

Unit 6



Listen and draw.

Students listen and draw the correct feature on each face, using the completed face as a model for copying.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 Draw a mouth.
- 2 Draw two eyes.
- 3 Draw a nose.
- 4 Draw two ears.
- 5 Draw two cheeks.
- 6 Draw some hair.

KEY: 2 drawing of two eyes, 3 drawing of a nose.

4 drawing of two ears, 5 drawing of two cheeks. 6 drawing of hair

Listen and tick (1) the correct box.



Students read the sentences. Then they listen and put a tick in the yes box when the sentence matches the dialogue or in the no box when it doesn't.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 Interviewer: Psst, Julie! Are you tired?
- Girl 1: No, I'm not. I'm sad.
- 2

Interviewer: Psst, Robert! Are you excited? Boy 1: Yes, I am!

3

Interviewer: Psst, David! Are you angry? Boy 2: No. I'm not. I'm scared!

4

6

Interviewer: Psst. Mary! Are you sad? Girl 2: Yes. 1 am! 5

5 Interviewer: Psst, Ben! Are you scared?

Boy 3: No, I'm not. I'm angry.

Interviewer: Psst, Louise! Are you happy? Girl 3: No. I'm not, I'm sad.

KEY: 2 yes, 3 yes, 4 yes, 5 yes, 6 no

Unit 6

Progress test 2: Reading and writing



Read and complete the words. Then colour the picture.

Students read the sentences, complete the body words and then colour the picture.

KEY: 2 glasses (yellow), 3 ears (orange). 4 nose (blue), 5 mouth (pink), 6 face (green)

Read and circle.

Students look at the birthday chart. Then they read the sentences and circle the correct word.

KEY: 2 His, 3 Our, 4 Her, 5 Their, 6 His

Unit 7



Listen and tick (/) or cross (X).

Students listen and tick the box when the word matches the picture. They put a cross in the box when it doesn't match.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 boat
- 2 train
- 3 scooter
- 4 motorbike
- 5 taxi
- 6 helicopter

KEY: 2 X, 3 X, 4 J, 5 X, 6 J

1 Listen and circle.

Students listen and circle the correct phrase.

TAPESCRIPT

Man: Tell me two of your dreams. ... Yes, Paul? Boy 1: I'd like to go to Italy and I'd like to drive a taxi.

CD

2

Man: Yes, Jane?

Girl 1: I'd like to have a monkey and I'd like to ride a motorbike.

з

Man: Yes, Robert?

Boy 2: I'd like to fly a helicopter and I'd like to play football.

Man: Yes, Julie?

Girl 2: I'd like to go to the jungle and I'd like to have a tiger.

Man: Yes, Emma?

Girl 3: I'd like to drive a car and I'd like to have a frog.

6

Man: Yes, Sam?

Boy 3: I'd like to paint pictures and I'd like to fly a plane.

KEY: 2 ride a motorbike, 3 fly a helicopter, 4 go to the jungle. 5 drive a car, 6 fly a plane

Unit 7

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Write the words.

Students look at the pictures and write the words.

KEY: 2 lorry, 3 skateboard, 4 helicopter, 5 motorbike, 6 bus

Read and complete. 6.0

Students look at the pictures, read the sentences in the speech bubbles and complete the gaps with the correct words from the box.

KEY: 2 He's, 3 waiting, 4 am, 5 sleeping, 6 isn't

Unit 8



Listen and number.

Students listen and number the picture.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 tennis
- 2 baseball
- 3 hockey
- 4 volleyball
- 5 athletics
- 6 badminton
- KEY: 2 boy playing baseball, 3 boys playing hockey. 4 children playing volleyball, 5 children doing athletics (running), 6 girls playing badminton

CD D Listen and draw (3) or (3). 19/

Students listen and draw the correct face for the person on the right in the picture (a happy face if he/ she likes the activity and a sad face if he/she doesn't like the activity).

TAPESCRIPT

1

Boy: I like playing football.

Girl: I don't. Football is boring.

2

Girl: I like playing table tennis.

Boy: So do 1! Table tennis is fun.

з

Young man: I like playing basketball.

Young woman: Me too! But basketball is difficult.



4

Young woman: I like swimming. Young man: Me too. Swimming is great. 5

Woman: I like playing badminton. Man: I don't. Badminton isn't fun.

Man: I like painting. Woman: I don't. Painting is boring.

KEY: 2 (), 3 (), 4 (), 5 (), 6 ()

Unit 8

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Make words.

Students look at the pictures, solve the anagrams and write the words.

KEY: 2 swimming, 3 athletics, 4 hockey, 5 table tennis, 6 badminton

Read and match.

Students read the statements/questions and match them to the correct replies by drawing lines.

KEY: 2 c, 3 e, 4 a, 5 b, 6 d

Unit 9



1 Listen and tick (*) the correct picture.

Students listen and tick the correct picture from the two options.

TAPESCRIPT

- 1 visit cousins
- 2 go hiking
- 3 learn to swim
- 4 keep a scrapbook
- 5 help in the gorden
- 6 take riding lessons

KEY: 2 a, 3 a, 4 a, 5 b, 6 b

2 Listen and write Y (yes) or N (no).

o). 21

Students read the questions. Then they listen and answer them by writing Y for yes or N for no.

TAPESCRIPT

1 Girl: Mum! Mum: Yes, Sarah? Girl: Can I watch TV? Mum: No, you can't. Eat your lunch, please. 2 Boy: Dad! Can I take riding lessons? Dad: No, Tom. You can take tennis lessons.

3

Grandma: Can I help in the garden tomorrow? Mum: Yes, you can. Thanks, Grandma.

4

Boy: Dad! Can Sarah and I visit our cousins tomorrow? Girl: Oh please. Dad!

Dad: Yes. you can. I can drive you there in the morning. 5

Dad: Can I help in the kitchen?

Mum: Yes, you can. Thank you.

6

Girl: Mum! Can Tam and I have pizza for dinner? Mum: No, you can't. You can have sandwiches for dinner.

KEY: 2 N. 3 Y. 4 Y. 5 Y. 6 N

Unit 9

Progress test 2: Reading and writing

Read and circle.

Students look at the pictures, read and circle the correct word or phrase.

KEY: 2 learn to, 3 keep. 4 in, 5 build, 6 riding

2 Read and complete the questions.

Students read the questions and complete the gaps with the correct words from the box.

KEY: 2 Can. 3 Have. 4 Does. 5 Would. 6 Is



www.irLanguage.com



Resource Book 2

Are you ready to become one of the Super Minds?

This exciting seven-level course, from a highly experienced author team, enhances your students' thinking skills, improving their memory along with their English.

- S Develop creativity with visualisation exercises and art and craft activities
- S Explore social values with lively stories
- S Encourage cross-curricular thinking with fascinating 'English for school' sections

For ease of use, this Teacher's Book is interleaved with pages from the Student's Book. It includes detailed lesson aims, clear instructions and a vast array of extra activities.

FREE extra resources can be downloaded from www.cambridge.org/elt/superminds

Teacher's Boo	ic.			Teach	er's Resource Boo
Super Minds Level	CEFR Level	Combridge ESOL exame	Super Minds Level	CEFR Level	Combridge ESOL exams
Level 6	A2 - 81	Towards Preliminary far Schools	Level 6	A2-81	Towards Preliminary
Level 5 A2		Flyers / Key for Schools	Level 5	A2	Flyers / Key
	A2		Level 4	100	And the second sec
Level 4		Movers	Level 3	A1	Movers
Level 3	A1	Movers	Level 2		and the second s
Level 2		in the second se			Starters
Level 1		Starters	Level 1		
Starter			Storter	1	

Other resources you can use:







158N 978 0521 68125 8. 188N 976 1107 63852 5